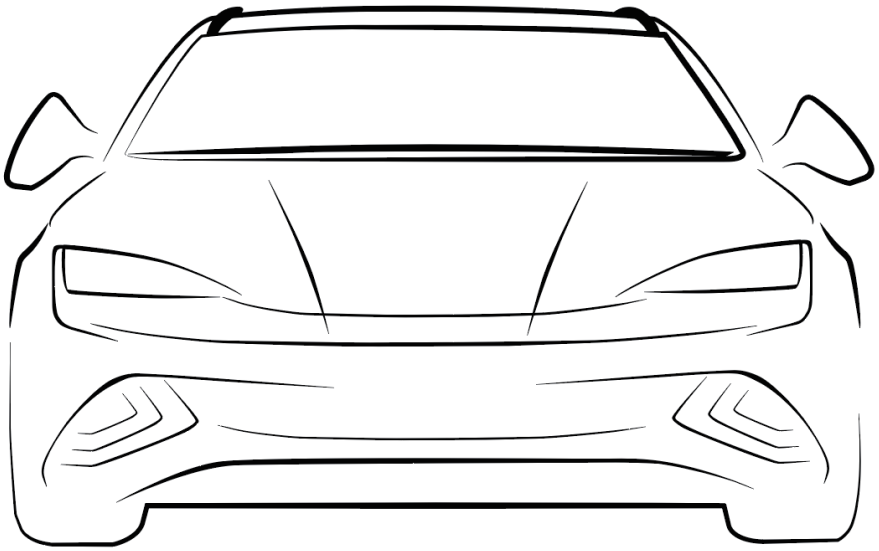
BYD SEAL

OWNER'S MANUAL



Foreword

Thank you for choosing BYD. To better use and maintain the vehicle, please read this manual carefully and keep it for future reference.

Special instructions: BYD Auto Co., Ltd. recommends that you choose genuine spare parts and use, maintain, and repair the vehicle in accordance with this manual. The use of non-genuine spare parts to replace or modify the vehicle will affect the performance of the entire vehicle, especially its safety and durability. Vehicle damage and performance issues caused thereby will not be covered by the warranty. In addition, vehicle modifications may also violate national laws and regulations and local government regulations.

Thank you again for choosing BYD. Your valuable comments and suggestions are welcome. To enjoy better services, please provide your accurate contact information. If there is any change to the information, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider in a timely manner to update the information in the system. You are also advised to pay attention to the relevant national laws and regulations and local policies, and register the vehicle as soon as possible; otherwise vehicle registration may fail.

The descriptions marked with the asterisk (*) in this manual are specific to only some model configurations, and applicable only when the vehicle has these configurations. If there is any difference with the vehicle you purchased, the configuration of the actual vehicle shall prevail.

Pay attention to the "REMINDER", "CAUTION" and "WARNING" symbols in this manual, and follow the instructions carefully to avoid injury or damage. These symbols are defined as follows:

WARNING

Items that must be observed to ensure personal safety.

CAUTION

Items that must be observed to avoid damage to the vehicle.

REMINDER

Items that must be observed to facilitate maintenance.

is a safety mark to indicate an operation that should not be performed or an event that should not happen.

This manual is expected to help you use the product correctly, and does not provide any description of the configuration and software version of this product. For details about the product configuration and software version, please refer to the contract (if any) related to this product, or consult the dealer who sold the product to you.

Sustainability

As a pure electric passenger vehicle, BYD SEAL is an environmentally friendly product. Please visit https://reach.bydeurope.com for environmental protection information about the vehicle.

Everyone has the responsibility to protect the environment. Please use this vehicle properly and dispose of any waste and cleaning materials according to the corresponding local laws and regulations.

Contact Us

If you require assistance or clarification on policies or procedures, please contact the customer service centre.

E-mail: Autoservice.contact@byd.com

Call 00800-10203000 for 24/7 roadside assistance or customer service (9:00-18:00, Monday-Saturday).

Copyright © BYD Auto Co., Ltd. All rights reserved.

No part of this document may be reproduced, copied, stored, translated, or transmitted electronically or in any other form without prior written consent and authorisation of BYD Auto Co., Ltd.

All rights reserved

Illustration Index

Exterior.....7
Dashboard..... 8
Interior..... 9
Doors..... 10

Safety

Seat Belts.....12
Seat Belt Overview..... 12
Using Seat Belts.....12
Airbags..... 15
Airbag Overview..... 15
Airbag Types..... 16
Airbag Triggering Conditions and Precautions.....18
Child Restraint Systems..... 22
Child Restraint Systems..... 22
Anti-theft Alarm System.....29
Anti-theft Alarm System.....29
Data Collection and Processing..... 30
Data Collection and Processing.....30

Instrument Cluster

Instrument Cluster..... 36
Instrument Cluster..... 36
Instrument Cluster Indicators.....37

Controller Operation

Doors and Keys.....48
Keys.....48
Locking/Unlocking Doors..... 52
Smart Access and Start System..... 59
Child Protection Lock.....61
Seats.....62
Seat Precautions..... 62
Adjusting Front Seats..... 63
Folding Rear Seats.....65
Rear Seat Head Supports..... 65
Steering Wheel..... 67
Steering Wheel Switches.....67
Adjusting the Steering Wheel.....69
Wipers..... 70
Wiper Switch.....70
Replacing Wiper Blades..... 71
Rearview Mirrors..... 72
Interior Rearview Mirror.....72
Power Side Mirrors..... 72
Switches..... 73
Light Switches..... 73
Driver's Door Switches..... 76
Window Control Switch on Passenger Side..... 78
Odometer Switch..... 78
Mode Switches..... 78
Front Passenger Airbag Switch (PAB)..... 79
Hazard Warning Light Switch.....80
Emergency Call (E-Call)*..... 80
Interior Light Switch.....81

Using and Driving

Charging/Discharging Instructions.... 84
Charging Instructions.....84
Charging.....88
Discharging Instructions..... 96
Charging Port Immobiliser System.....97
Driving Range Display..... 98

Regenerative Braking Settings.....99
Batteries..... 100
High-Voltage Battery.....100
Low-Voltage Battery.....103
Usage Precautions..... 104
Break-in Period.....104
Trailer Towing*..... 104
Driving Safety Precautions.....105
Vehicle Use Suggestions..... 106
Saving Energy and Extending Vehicle Service Life.....107
Carrying Luggage..... 107
Wading into Water.....108
Fire Prevention.....109
Starting and Driving.....111
Starting the Vehicle..... 111
Driving.....113
Gear Shift Controls.....114
Electronic Parking Brake (EPB).....115
Automatic Vehicle Hold (AVH).....118
Driving Precautions.....119
Driving Assistance.....121
Driver Assistance System..... 121
Driving Assist..... 127
Forward Safety Assist.....138
Side Safety Assist.....150
Rear Safety Assist..... 159
Head-up Display (HUD)*..... 164
Tyre Pressure Monitoring.....165
Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System (AVAS).....166
Around View Monitor.....167
Lighting.....169
Parking Assist System..... 170
Driving Safety Systems.....174
Driver Monitoring System (DMS)..... 177
Intelligence Torque Adaption Control (iTAC) System*.....178
Child Presence Detection (CPD).....179
0-62 mph (0-100 km/h): Full Throttle Experience..... 180

In-Vehicle Devices

Infotainment System..... 182
Infotainment Touchscreen.....182
Navigation Bar.....183
Gestures and Responses.....183
OTA Update.....183
BYD Assistant.....184
Bluetooth Call.....184
Speakers..... 184
File Management.....185
Phone Projection.....185
A/C System..... 187
A/C Buttons.....187
A/C Operation Interface..... 187
Function Definition..... 188
A/C Settings..... 191
Vents..... 191
BYD App*..... 192
About BYD App.....192
Account Registration..... 192
Vehicle Condition and Control.....192
Individual Centre and Vehicle Management.....192
Storage..... 193
Glove Box.....193
Cubby Box.....193
Cup Holder.....193
Door Bins..... 194

Bill Box..... 194
Seatback Pockets..... 194
Engine Compartment Storage..... 195
Other Devices..... 195
Sun Visor..... 195
Grab Handles..... 195
12V Auxiliary Power..... 195
USB Ports..... 196
Wireless Phone Charger..... 197

Maintenance

Maintenance Information..... 200
Maintenance Cycle and Items..... 200
Regular Maintenance..... 202
Regular Maintenance..... 202
Vehicle Corrosion Prevention..... 203
Paint Maintenance Tips..... 203
Exterior Cleaning..... 204
Interior Cleaning..... 205
Self-Maintenance..... 207
Self-Maintenance..... 207
Canopy Maintenance..... 209
Vehicle Storage..... 209
Bonnet..... 210
Cooling System..... 210
Braking System..... 211
Washer..... 211
A/C System..... 212
Wiper Blades..... 212
Tyres..... 213
Fuses..... 216

When Faults Occur

When Faults Occur..... 218
Reflective Vest..... 218
If Smart Key Battery Is Exhausted..... 218
Emergency Shutdown System..... 218
If a Collision Occurs..... 219
If the High-Voltage Battery Leaks..... 219
Vehicle Fire Rescue..... 220
If the Vehicle Needs Towing..... 221
If a Tyre Goes Flat..... 222
If the Battery Is Exhausted..... 225
If the Vehicle Needs Support..... 226

Specifications

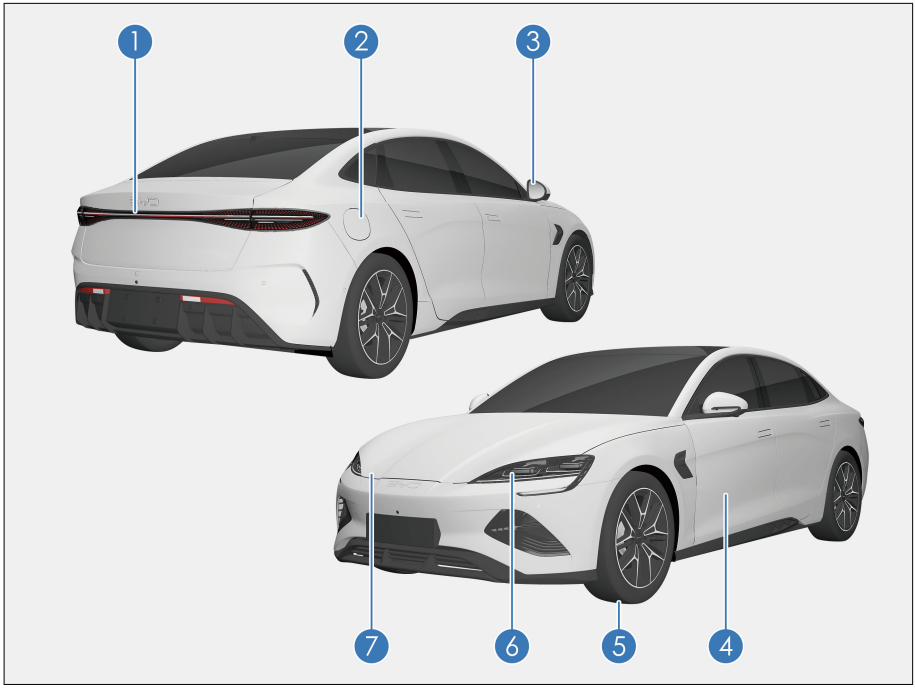
Vehicle Data..... 230
Vehicle Data..... 230
Information..... 233
Vehicle Identification..... 233
Warning Labels..... 234
Declarations of Conformity..... 235
Declarations of Conformity..... 235

Abbreviations

Abbreviations..... 243

Illustration Index

Exterior



1 Boot Switch ***P56***

2 Using Mode 2 Charging Cable* ***P88***

Using AC Charging Piles* ***P91***

Using DC Chargers* ***P92***

3 Adjusting Side Mirrors ***P72***

4 Doors ***P52***

5 Tyre ***P213***

Snow Chains ***P120***

If a Tyre Goes Flat ***P222***

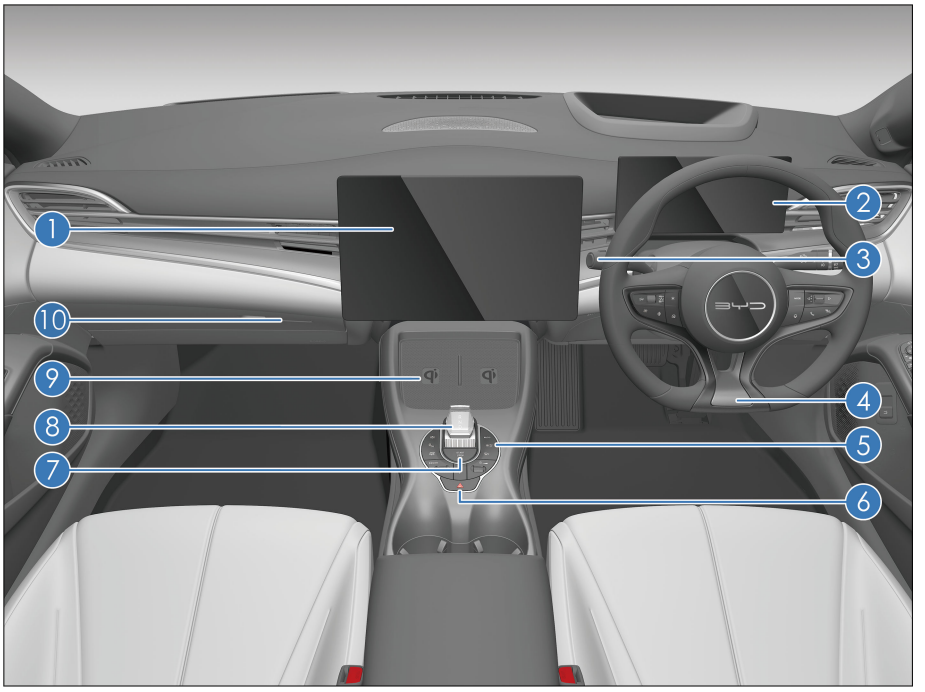
6 Combination Lights ***P73***

7 Bonnet ***P210***

Coolant ***P210***

Washer System ***P211***

Dashboard



1 Infotainment Touchscreen ***P182***

2 Instrument Cluster ***P36***

3 Light Switches ***P73***

4 Steering Wheel ***P67***

5 A/C Buttons ***P187***

6 Hazard Warning Light Switch ***P80***

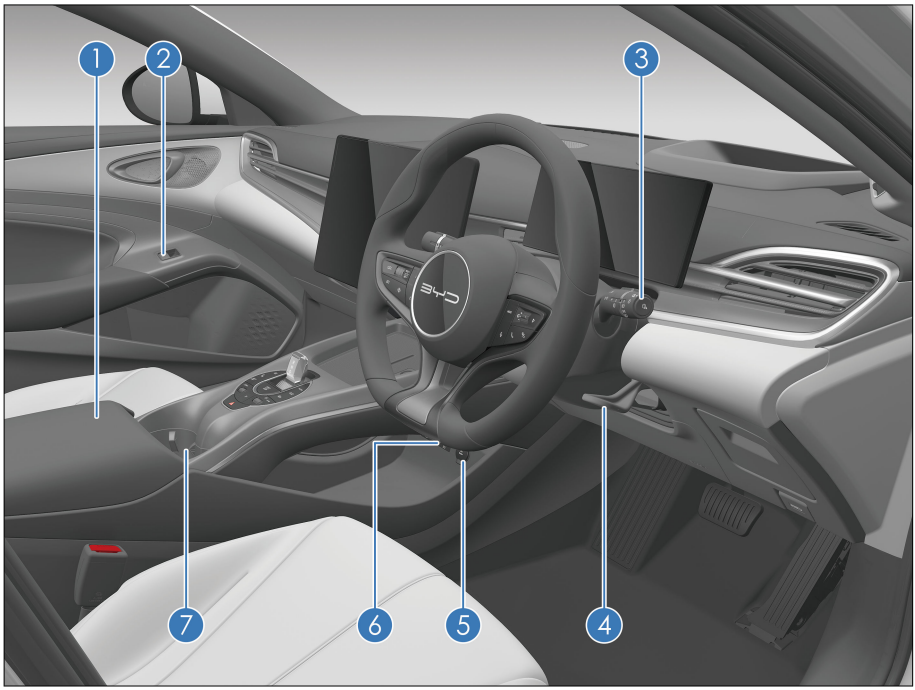
7 Press the START/STOP button ***P111***.

8 Gear Shift Controls ***P114***

9 Wireless Phone Charger ***P197***

10 Glove Box ***P193***

Interior



1 Centre Console Cubby ***P193***

2 Window Control Switch on Passenger Side ***P78***

3 Odometer Switch ***P78***

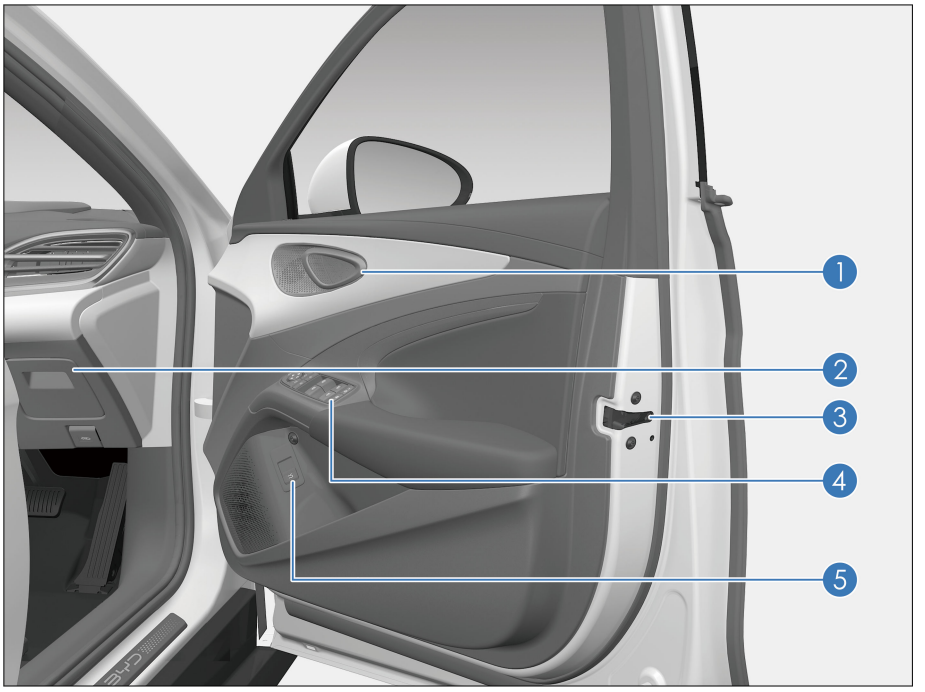
4 Adjusting the Steering Wheel ***P69***

5 12V Auxiliary Power ***P195***

6 USB Ports ***P196***

7 Front Seat Cup Holder ***P193***

Doors



1 Opening with Interior Door Handle ***P53***

2 Bill Box ***P194***

3 Emergency Vehicle Locking with Mechanical Key ***P59***

4 Driver's Door Switches ***P76***

5 Locking/Unlocking the Boot ***P56***

01 SAFETY

Seat Belts..... 12
Airbags..... 15
Child Restraint Systems..... 22
Anti-theft Alarm System..... 29
Data Collection and Processing..... 30

Seat Belts

Seat Belt Overview

Studies have shown that proper use of seat belts can significantly reduce casualties in emergency braking, sudden steering or collisions. Please read the following information carefully and observe it strictly.

WARNING

- Before driving, make sure all occupants are properly buckled up to prevent personal injury or even death in emergency braking or in a collision.
- The seat belts are designed primarily to fit adults and are not intended for children. Make sure to choose an child restraint system appropriate for your child's age and size.
- If a seat belt is damaged or malfunctions, immediately contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for confirmation and handling. Until then, do not use the corresponding seat.

- BYD has highly emphasised that all occupants should always fasten their seat belts while in the vehicle to prevent serious injury or death.
- It is recommended that children be seated in rear seats and always use seat belts and suitable child restraints. In emergency braking or collision, unprotected children may be seriously injured and their lives may be endangered. Likewise, do not allow children to ride on someone's lap. This will render the children not adequately protected.

Emergency Locking Retractor (ELR) Function

- When the driver turns sharply or brakes suddenly, when there is a collision, or when the occupant leans forward too quickly, the seat belt automatically locks to effectively restrain and protect the occupant.
- When the vehicle travels smoothly, seat belts are pulled out and retracted as the occupants move slowly and smoothly, allowing the occupants to move freely.
- If the seat belt locks due to sudden retraction, pull on the seat belt webbing to create retractable slack in order to pull out the seat belt.

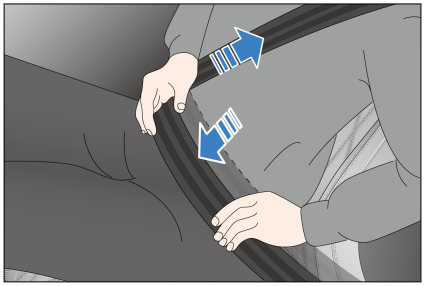
Pretensioner and Force Limiter Function*

When a severe front collision occurs and the triggering conditions of the pretensioner are met, the pretensioner quickly retracts part of the seat belt and locks it to improve the protection of the occupant. The force limiter limits the seat-belt restraint force to the occupant's body to a certain extent so as to avoid injury to the occupant due to an excessive restraint force.

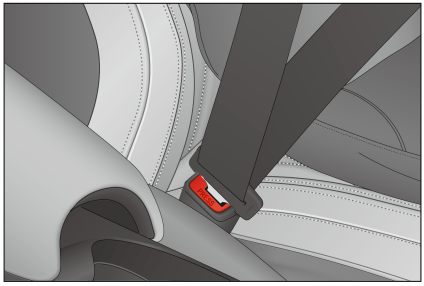
Using Seat Belts

1. Adjust the seat position and seatback angle (see ***P63***).
2. Adjust the position of the three-point seat belt.

- Keep the correct sitting posture and pull out the shoulder belt diagonally across the entire shoulder without contacting the neck or falling from the shoulder. Position the lap belt as low as possible around the hip.



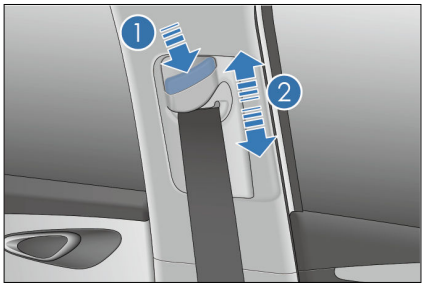
3. Insert the latch into the buckle until it clicks, and then pull it back to make sure it is firmly locked. Do not fasten the belt with any part of the strap twisted.



4. Adjust the height of the (front) seat belts for optimum comfort and protection.

① Press the adjuster release button.

② Move the adjuster up or down to the intended position. Release the button to lock the adjuster.



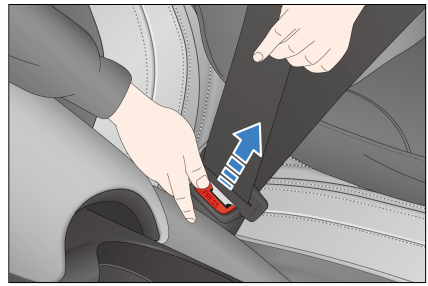
5. Pull the belt firmly to check that the adjuster is locked.

WARNING

- The shoulder belt should cross the centre of the shoulder. The seat belt should be far from the neck and not liable to slip from the shoulder; otherwise, it cannot function well in the event of emergency braking or accident and may even cause severe injury.
- The lap belt should be positioned as low as possible around the hips to avoid serious injury due to the intense lap belt forces against the abdomen in an accident.
- The seat belt should be fitted tight to the body for better protection.

6. Unlock the seat belt.

- Press the red unlock button on the buckle. The latch plate pops out, and the seat belt automatically retracts. If the seat belt does not retract smoothly and automatically, pull it out and check whether it is twisted.



WARNING

- One seat belt is for one occupant only. Each seat belt must be used by one occupant only. Do not share a seat belt with another occupant, not even with a child.

WARNING

- Avoid travelling with the seatback leaning too far back. The seat belt protection performs best when the seatback is upright.
- Make sure that no seat belt or its spring bolt/buckle becomes pressed by the door; otherwise, the seat belt may be damaged.
- Check the seat belts regularly for cuts, wear, looseness, and other abnormalities. If any problem is found, immediately contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for confirmation and handling. Until then, do not use the corresponding seat.
- Do not remove, disassemble or modify the seat belts.
- After an accident, have the seat belts checked at a BYD authorised dealer or service provider. If the preloading function is activated, the seat belt must be replaced. Use an approved model whenever you replace the seat belt.
- In the event of a serious accident, even if there is no apparent damage, the seat belt should be replaced along with the seat assembly. The airbag system should also be thoroughly inspected.
- Pregnant women need to fasten the seat belts properly and position the lapbelt as low as possible around the hips to avoid serious injury from the intense lap belt forces against the abdomen in an accident.
- The method of wearing a rear seat belt is the same as that for a front seat belt. For normal functioning of the rear seat belt,

WARNING

ensure that its latch is inserted into the corresponding buckle during use. The driver should remind passengers to wear seat belts properly.

- Do not insert foreign objects such as coins and clips into the buckle as they prevent proper connection between the latch and buckle.

Seat Belt Reminders

If the driver, front passenger and rear passengers* fail to fasten their seat belts after the vehicle is started, the alarm system will go off until the corresponding seat belt has been properly fastened.

- Seat belt reminder main indicator
  - Any unfastened seat belt will trigger the main indicator to flash.
- Display of unfastened seat belt
  - The indicator for the seat with unfastened seat belt and alarm lights up.
- Seat belt reminder for front passenger
  - If the driver or front passenger does not wear the seat belt after the vehicle is started, the seat belt indicator and the indicator associated with the corresponding seat light up. If the seat belt remains unfastened while driving, in addition to the unfastened seat belt indicator, an audible alarm is given to remind the driver and occupants.
- Seat belt reminder for rear passengers*
  - With the ignition switch on OK, if any rear-row seat belt is not fastened, the unfastened seat belt indicator and the indicator associated with the corresponding seat light up.

- With the vehicle reaching a speed of 12 mph (20 km/h), when only rear seats are loaded with occupants and the occupants fail to fasten their seat belts, the seat belt indicator lights on.

- When the driver, the front passenger, and rear passengers* have buckled up, the seat belt reminder indicator and all indicators displayed for the corresponding seats turn off.

WARNING

- In the event of abnormality or function failure, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider. Do not use the corresponding seat until the functions return to normal.
- When driving, make sure all occupants have their seat belts properly fastened to prevent serious injury or death in emergency braking or in a collision.

Airbags

Airbag Overview

- The airbag system is a part of supplemental restraint system and also a supplement to seat belts. When the vehicle is involved in a serious collision and the airbag system meets its deployment conditions, relevant airbags will rapidly deploy, and along with seat belts, provide additional protection for heads and chests of the occupants, reducing likelihood of personal injuries or even death.
- Airbags are divided into front and side types according to the type of collision. The front airbags include a driver airbag and a front passenger airbag, while side airbags include seat side airbags, curtain airbags and the far side airbag*.
- As an integral part of the vehicle's passive safety protection system, the airbag system does not replace seat belts, and must be used in combination with seat belts to maximise protection.

Multi-collision braking (MCB)

- In the event of an accident, the automatic braking will be activated when the driver airbag or the front passenger airbag deploys.
- Speed reduction, along with intervention by additional driving systems (ESC and ABS), assists the vehicle to maintain stability and lane position.
- Hazard warning light and brake light would light up to warn oncoming vehicles and aid to avoid secondary collision.
- The brake is released after an accident and brake lights are turned off to support emergency rescue or recovery of the affected vehicle.
- The driver can interrupt the multi-collision braking at any time by accelerating or braking.

WARNING

- Never seat a child in the front passenger seat.
- Occupants must sit in a proper position to maximise the protection provided by seat belts and the airbag system.
- Do not disassemble or assemble airbag components.

WARNING

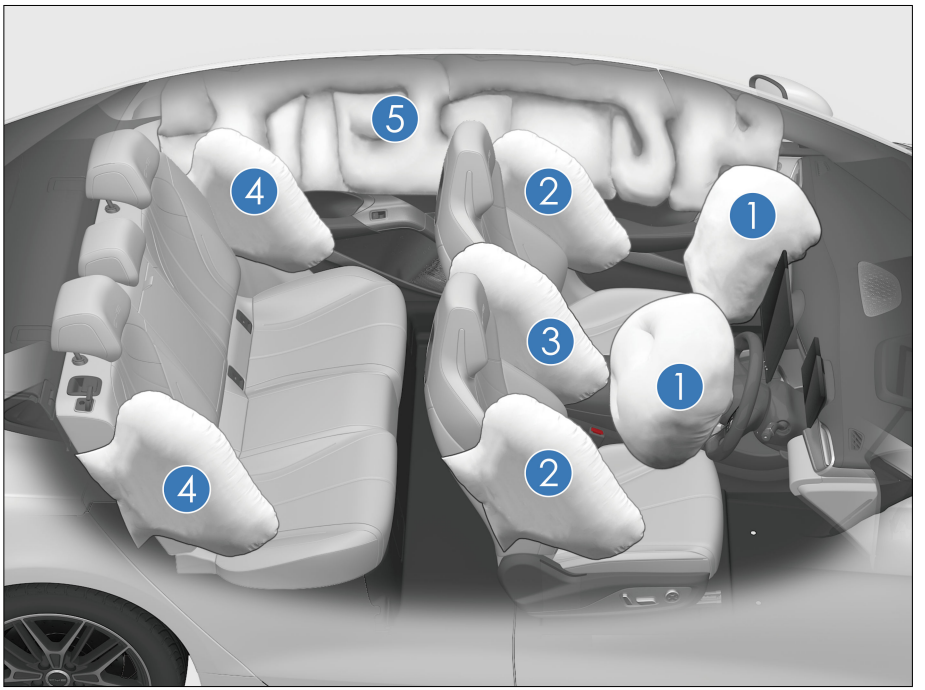
- If the seatbacks get wet from rain or splashes, the side airbag system may not work properly.
- Do not use seat covers, as they restrict airbag deployment on the corresponding side in an accident.
- Do not place anything between the airbag and the occupant.
- Do not apply excessive force to the side of seats equipped with side airbags.
- After a collision, even if the airbag did not deploy, and the pretensioner did not lock the seat belt, to ensure the normal

WARNING

operation of the airbag system, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible.

- If the vehicle is ingressed with water (wet carpet or vehicle submerged in water) or damaged by water, do not start the vehicle and the low-voltage battery needs to be disconnected. Otherwise, the airbags may deploy, resulting in serious injury or death.

Airbag Types



① Driver and front passenger airbags

④ Rear seat side airbags

② Front seat side airbags

③ Front far side airbag

⑤ Side curtain airbags

Driver and Front Passenger Airbags

The driver airbag is mounted inside the steering wheel and the front passenger airbag is mounted inside the dashboard, both marked with "AIRBAG". When the airbag system detects a moderate to severe front impact after the vehicle being powered on and the corresponding triggering conditions are met, the airbags deploy.

Front airbag deployment

- In moderate to severe frontal crashes, a sensor detects a sharp deceleration and sends a signal to the ECU to trigger the front airbags.
- When there is a frontal crash, the seat belt secures the occupant's lower body and torso and the airbag cushions and protects the occupant's head and chest.
- When the severity of the impact does not reach the airbag deployment threshold, seat belts provide enough protection.
- The front airbag deflates immediately after inflation, without affecting the driver's vision and ability to operate the steering wheel or other controls.
- Airbags can inflate rapidly when triggering conditions are satisfied to further protect drivers and occupants in an accident.
- A loud noise will be heard when the airbag deploys. It will not cause injury, but it may cause tinnitus or temporary deafness.
- The deployment of airbags may release smoke and dust. Although these substances are non-toxic, passengers with respiratory conditions may experience temporary discomfort. If the discomfort is severe, seek medical attention immediately.
- The front passenger airbag is controlled by the passenger airbag (PAB) switch. For details, see PAB Switch.

WARNING

- No accessories, such as telephone holders, cups, ashtrays, may be installed on airbag covers or within their action range. Otherwise, airbag deployment will increase the risk of injury in an accident.

Seat Side Airbags

The seat side airbags are mounted on the outside of seatbacks, marked with "AIRBAG". When a moderate to severe impact is detected while the vehicle is powered on and the triggering conditions are met, the side airbag deploys to protect the chest of the occupant on the impacted side.

WARNING

- In the event of a side impact, the airbag on the impacted side deploys when the airbag system meets its deployment conditions.
- If the impact occurs on the passenger's side, the airbag on the passenger's side deploys even if there is no passenger in the seat.
- Do not cover or replace seatback covers on you own. Unsuitable

WARNING

seatback covers may prevent airbag deployment.

- For optimal side airbag protection, occupants must have their seat belts fastened and sit upright against the seatback.
- Do not wet the seatbacks, in case the side airbag system may not work properly.

Front far side airbag

The front far side airbag is mounted in the inner edge of the driver's seat, marked with "AIRBAG" . When a moderate to severe impact is detected after the vehicle being powered on and the triggering conditions are met, the far side airbag deploys to protect the heads and shoulders of the driver and the front passenger.

WARNING

- If the impact occurs on the front passenger's side, the far side airbag deploys even if there is no passenger in the seat.
- Do not cover or replace seatback covers on you own. Unsuitable seatback cover replacements or covers may prevent airbag deployment in a collision.
- Do not wet the seatbacks, in case the front far side airbag system may not work properly.
- For optimum far side airbag protection, the occupant must have their seat belt fastened and sit in an upright position.

Side Curtain Airbags

The left and right side curtain airbags are mounted at the junctions of the side wall and the ceiling, marked with "AIRBAG" on the A, B and C pillars. When a moderate to severe impact is detected while the vehicle is powered on and the triggering conditions are met, the side curtain airbag deploys to protect the head of the occupants.

WARNING

- For optimum curtain airbag protection, the occupant must have their seat belt fastened and sit in an upright position.

Airbag Triggering Conditions and Precautions

Airbag Triggering Conditions

- In the event of a vehicle collision, whether an airbag will be triggered is decided by factors such as the amount of collision energy, accident type, collision angle, obstacle type, and vehicle speed. The airbag system may be triggered in special collisions.
- The airbag system does not always work in any accident, and generally it will not be triggered in the event of a minor frontal collision, side collision, rear collision or rollover. In this case, the driver and passengers are protected by their properly fastened seat belts.
- Determinants of airbag system triggering: Decision is made by comparing the deceleration curve, generated in the collision and obtained by the Electronic Control Unit (ECU), and the set value. If signals, such as

the deceleration curve generated and measured in the collision, are lower than the respective reference values preset in the ECU, the airbag system will not be triggered even if the vehicle may have been seriously deformed in the accident.

- The ECU of the BYD airbag system has been set up with considerations of common misuse and road conditions. However, due to the increasing changes in causes and forms of vehicle collisions, for your safety, please strictly follow this user manual, use the vehicle correctly, and avoid its misuse. Otherwise, there is no guarantee that the airbags will achieve their expected effect.

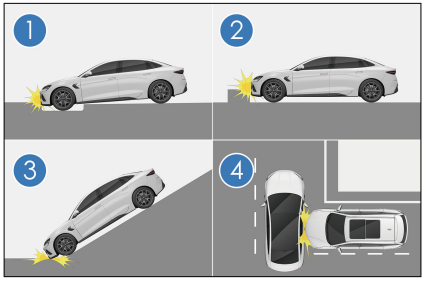
Cases When Airbags May Be Deployed

① The vehicle's nose hits the ground when crossing a deep groove.

② The vehicle hits a bump or curbstone.

③ The vehicle's nose hits the ground when going down a steep slope.

④ One side of the vehicle is hit by another vehicle.



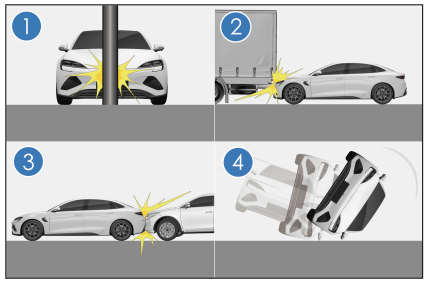
Cases When Airbags May Not Be Deployed

① The vehicle hits a concrete column, tree, or other slim objects.

② The vehicle goes under a truck or another large vehicle.

③ The tail of the vehicle is hit by another vehicle.

④ The vehicle rolls over.

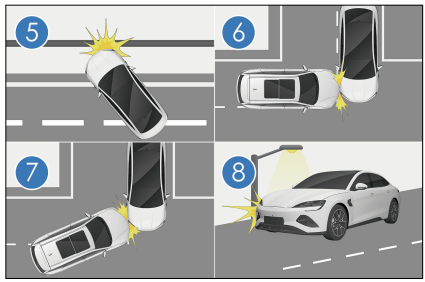


⑤ The vehicle hits a wall or a vehicle at a side other than the front side.

⑥ Parts other than the passenger compartment receive side impact.

⑦ The lateral side of the vehicle is hit diagonally.

⑧ The lateral side of the vehicle hits a columnar object.



WARNING

- Airbags are designed for specific models. Any changes to suspension, tyre size, bumpers, chassis and factory-equipped devices may adversely affect the airbag system. Users must not use any parts of the airbag system on other vehicle models; doing so may lead to failure of the airbag system.

WARNING

- Drivers should maintain a distance of at least 10 in (25 cm) between their chest and the steering wheel, in order for the system to provide the most effective protection.
- When the airbag system deploys, the airbag reaction high temperature gas will be discharged from the airbag vent. Drivers should avoid touching its parts and keep hands holding the steering wheel in the correct position, otherwise there is a possibility of burns when the airbag deploys.
- Fasten your seat belt and sit properly while the vehicle is in motion. If the seat belt is not fastened, and the occupant is leaning forward or sitting improperly, airbag deployment can increase the risk of injury.
- Do not paste stickers, cover or decorate the button area or the centre cap of the steering wheel, the right side surface of the dashboard at and near the location of the airbag, the surface of A, B, and C-pillar trims, or the surface at and near the location of seat side airbags with any object. Clean these surfaces with a dry or damp cloth, without applying too much pressure.
- A child is not to be seated in the front passenger seat, nor are they to ride sitting on a front passenger's lap. to prevent serious injury or even casualty caused by airbag deployment.
- Side airbags and side curtain airbags deploy quickly with high impact forces. Occupants must not lean against the doors of

WARNING

vehicles equipped with these airbags while these vehicles are in motion, because doing so may result in serious injuries or even death.

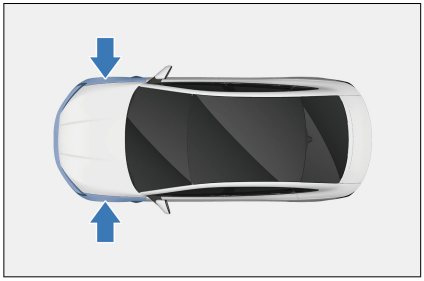
- Do not place any other accessories or items within the action range of side curtain airbags, including the windscreen, side door glass, A-pillar trim, ceiling, B-pillar trim, C-pillar trim and auxiliary handles. When the side curtain airbag deploys, the accessories or items will be thrown by the impact force from the side air curtain airbag, or the side curtain airbag may not deploy normally, resulting in serious injury or even death.
- When transferring vehicle ownership, make sure to pass on all of the vehicle's documents and keep the new ownership informed of airbag conditions as well as replacing date.
- Do not modify or replace seats or trims of the seats with side airbags. These changes may prevent normal deployment of side airbags, and thereby cause airbag system failure or unintended deployment of side airbags, resulting in serious injury or death.
- Do not disassemble or repair the A-pillar trim, ceiling, B-pillar trim or C-pillar trim, which contain side curtain airbags. These changes can cause failure of the airbag system or accidental deployment of curtain airbags, which may cause serious injury or even death.

WARNING

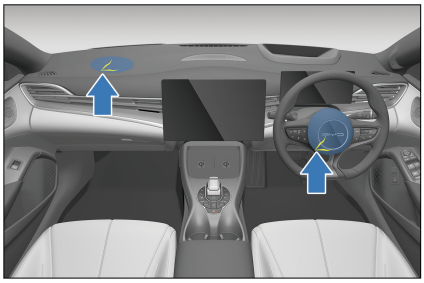
- Do not change any component of the airbag system, including any corresponding label. It is recommended that any operation done to the airbags be performed by a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
- Airbags can only provide one-time accident protection. Once the airbag is triggered or damaged, the airbag system must be replaced.
- Follow safety regulations and procedures related to the scrapping of parts of the vehicle or its airbag system.
- The airbag system has strong anti-interference and anti-disturbance resistance to electromagnetic fields around it. However, to avoid accidents, do not use the vehicle in an electromagnetic environment that violates national regulations.
- The airbag system of this vehicle is designed with full consideration of common misuses and road conditions. However, in order to avoid accidents, do not have the bottom of the vehicle impacted or drive roughly in harsh road conditions.
- This vehicle's airbag system has been fully verified to seamlessly match the vehicle's original wiring harness system. Any wiring harness modification or alteration may cause the airbags to deploy mistakenly under normal conditions or fail to deploy in the event of a collision.

It is recommended that you contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider immediately if any of the following situations occurs.

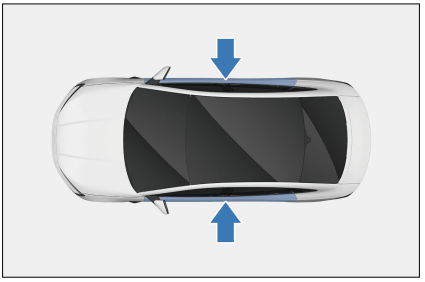
- Any airbag has deployed.
- Instrument cluster airbag warning light lights up abnormally.
- There is a collision with the front of the vehicle (highlighted area shown), but the airbags do not deploy.



- The airbag cover (highlighted area shown) has been scratched, cracked or otherwise damaged.



- There is a collision with the doors of the vehicle (highlighted area shown), but the airbags do not deploy.



- Airbags need to be removed, disassembled, installed or repaired.
- Side airbags and curtain airbags have deployed.
- The surface of the seat with a side airbag is scratched, cracked, or damaged similarly.
- Decorative (liner) parts at A-pillar with built-in curtain airbags, roof beam and C-pillar are scratched, cracked, or damaged similarly.

Child Restraint Systems

Child Restraint Systems

Child restraint systems provide good protection to your child in an accident. For child safety, please carefully read the instructions provided by the child restraint manufacturer and this manual before installing a child restraint.

WARNING

- Never carry a child on your lap while travelling.
- An appropriate child restraint system must be used for your child.

WARNING

- Please follow the instructions provided with the child restraint system and in this manual to make sure the child restraint it is properly installed in the vehicle.
- After the child restraint is dismounted from the seat, store it safely in your vehicle.
- Failure to follow the instruction provided by the child restraint manufacturer and this manual may cause injuries and even death to your child in an accident.

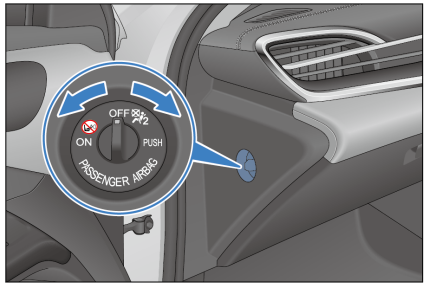
Children must be secured in a suitable child restraint in a comfortable and safe way when travelling in the vehicle. Make sure that the child restraint is positioned, mounted, and used correctly.

Important considerations for selecting a child restraint system

- The child restraint system is the correct type and size for the child.
- The child restraint system is the correct type and size for the seating position.
- The child restraint system must be homologated by ECE R44/ECE R129.

Passenger Airbag Switch

- The switch is located on the passenger's side of the dashboard and is accessible when the passenger's door is open.
- See ***P79*** for details.



WARNING

- Never use a rear-facing child restraint on the front passenger seat if the passenger airbag is activated.

Child Restraint System Anchorages

Front passenger seat

- The front passenger seat is equipped with ISOFIX/i-Size anchorages. The anchorage locations are identified by a marking (see illustration) located on the seatback, directly above the associated anchorages.



- The front passenger seat is equipped with tether strap anchorages on the back.



WARNING

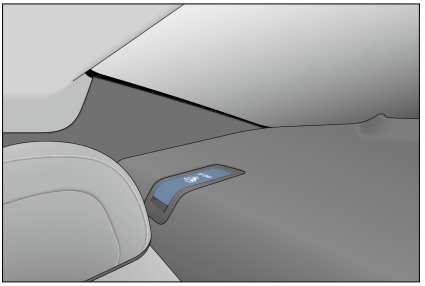
- Where applicable to use a top tether strap with the child restraint system, ensure the strap is routed through the hole in the head support before attaching and tensioning the strap to the anchorage point at the base of the seat.

Rear outboard seat

- The anchorage is provided on the rear outboard seat (the label showing the anchorage is attached to the seat).



- Anchor supports (for the top tether) are provided at the rear outboard seat.



CAUTION

- Secure the top tether when installing the child restraint system.

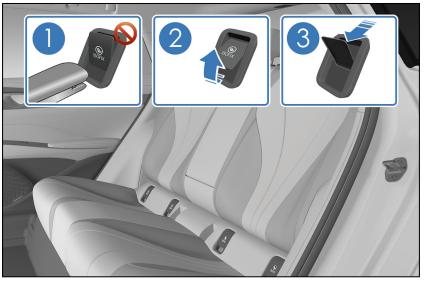
Installing Child Restraint Systems

Precautions for installation

① Do not turn the anchorage lever trim cover outward.

② Push the anchorage lever trim cover inward in use.

③ Press the upper part of anchorage lever trim cover to reset after use.



Installing child restraint systems:

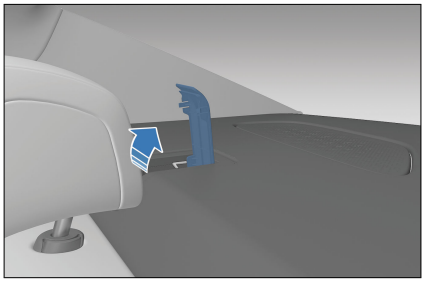
1. Open the anchorage lever trim cover and install the child restraint system to the seat.



REMINDER

- The anchorage lever is located on the bevel at the rear end of the seat cushion. It can be seen when the lower part of the child restraint trim cover is pressed. After the child restraint is removed, the upper part of its cover needs to be pressed to return the cover.

2. Open the anchor support cover.

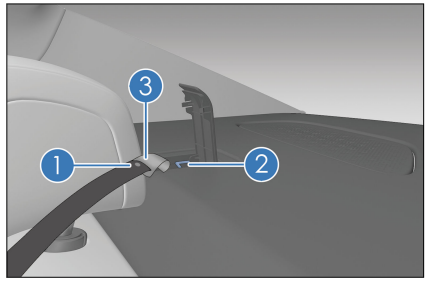


3. Fasten the snap hook to the anchor support and tighten the top tether to ensure the strap is buckled securely.

① Top tether

② Anchor support

③ Snap hook



WARNING

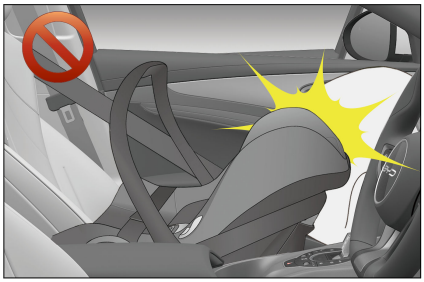
- Push/Pull the child restraint in different directions to ensure it is securely installed.
- When using the lower anchoring device, make sure that no foreign objects are around the anchoring device and that the seat belt is not stuck behind the child restraint; make sure that the CRS is securely fixed. Otherwise, emergency braking or an accident may result in serious or even fatal injury to the child.
- Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harness, or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

REMINDER

- If the CRS is equipped with a top tether, secure the tether to the anchoring device.

- If the driver seat obstructs the correct installation of the CRS, install it on the left rear seat.
- Do not use a rear-facing child restraint system on a seat protected by front airbag (active); otherwise, in the event

of an accident, the impact force applied when the front passenger airbag deploys rapidly will cause severe injury or even fatal injury to a child.



Always follow the instructions below when using a child restraint on the front passenger seat:

- Never use a rearward-facing child restraint on the front passenger seat if the passenger airbag is activated. The airbag must be activated immediately after the rearward-facing child restraint system is dismounted from the front passenger seat.
- If needed, adjust the front passenger seat backwards so that there is no contact between the child and vehicle interior.
- If needed, the front passenger seatback and seating height can be adjusted so that it has secure contact with the child restraint system.
- For child restraint systems with the guide fitting of belt attached to the child seat headrest, ensure that the guide fitting is positioned forward or in line with the seat belt upper anchorage on the vehicle's B-pillar.
- When a forward-facing child restraint system is used on the front passenger seat, ensure that the seat is positioned fully rearward away from the active airbag.
- Ensure that the seat belt passes through the guide fitting without kinking and is not bent over the edge of the guide fitting.

Always follow the instructions below when using a child restraint on a rear seat:

- If there is no front passenger, the front passenger seat can be adjusted to make sure there is enough space between the front seat and rear child seat.
- The head restriant can be adjusted or even removed to ensure that the vehicle seatback can safely support the child restraint system.
- When a child restraint is without seatback, never remove the head restraint from the vehicle and adjust it to the locking position.
- When the top tether is used on a rear outboard seat, route it at the outside of each head post.
- For more installation instructions, please read the instructions provided with your child restraint system.

Details on child restraint system installation:

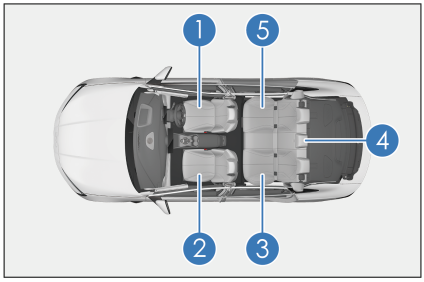
① Driver seat

② Front passenger seat

③ Rear left seat

④ Rear centre seat

⑤ Rear right seat



ISOFIX or i-Size CRS installing options in the vehicle:

	Seating Position					
		2				
	1	**Front Passenger Airbag Activated** [a]	**Front Passenger Airbag Deactivated** [a]	**3** [b]	**4** [b]	**5** [b]
Seating position suitable for universal belted (Yes/No)	×	Yes Forward-facing only	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
i-Size seating position (Yes/No)	×	Yes Forward-facing only	Yes	Yes	No	Yes
Seating position suitable for lateral fixture (L1/L2/No)	×	No	No	No	No	No
Largest suitable rearward-facing fixture (R1/R2X/R2/R3/No)	×	No	R1/R2X/R2/R3	R1/R2X/R2/R3	No	R1/R2X/R2/R3

	Seating Position					
		2				
	1	Front Passenger Airbag Activated [a]	Front Passenger Airbag Deactivated [a]	3 [b]	4 [b]	5 [b]
Largest suitable forward-facing fixture (F2X/F2/F3/No)	×	F2X/F2/F3	F2X/F2/F3	F2X/F2/F3	No	F2X/F2/F3
Largest suitable booster fixture (B2/B3/No)	×	B2/B3	B2/B3	B2/B3	No	B2/B3

[a] If needed, the seat can be adjusted in forward or backward, and the seatback angle can be adjusted.

[b] If needed, the headrest can be adjusted or even removed. The front seats can be adjusted to ensure the child is not in contact with them.

×: seat position not suitable for installing a child restraint of this weight group.

Recommended child restraint systems

Choose a suitable child restraint system for your child's age and stature.

- Recommended child restraint systems:

Grouping of child stature according to standard of ECE R129

Child Stature	Manufacturer	Child Restraint Systems	Comment
16-33 in (40-83 cm)	Maxi-Cosi	Pebble 360	Belted
30-41 in (76-105 cm)	Britax Römer	Trifix 2 i-Size	ISOFIX and belted
39-59 in (100-150 cm)	Britax Römer	Kidfix i-Size [a]	ISOFIX and belted

Child Stature	Manufacturer	Child Restraint Systems	Comment

[a]: Be sure to attach the seat belt through SecureGuard and XP-PAD.

Grouping of child weight according to ECE R44 standard

Child Weight	Manufacturer	Child Restraint Systems	Comment
49-79 lb (22-36 kg)	Graco	Booster Basic	Belted

① 16-33 in (40-83 cm)

② 30-41 in (76-105 cm)

③ 39-59 in (100-150 cm)

④ 49-79 lb (22-36 kg)



Anti-theft Alarm System

Anti-theft Alarm System

Arming the system

1. Switch the ignition off.
2. All occupants get off the vehicle.
3. Lock all doors and the anti-theft alarm system will arm automatically after 8 seconds.

Triggering the alarm

- The system, when armed, will raise an alarm* with flashing turn signals in any of the following situations:
  - Any door, boot lid or bonnet is unlocked without using the smart key access function.
  - Use the mechanical key to unlock the vehicle.

Disarming the system

- Anti-theft alarm can be stopped by:
  - Unlocking the door with a valid smart key/NFC key*/Bluetooth Digital Key*.
  - Using the microswitch to unlock the door by carrying a valid smart key.
  - Use of a valid smart key to remotely open the boot.
  - Starting the vehicle remotely with a valid smart key.
  - Pressing the START/STOP button inside the vehicle while carrying a valid smart key.

WARNING

- Do not repair, replace or modify the components of the anti-theft system; such modifications may cause the system to malfunction or affect the terms of the insurance.

WARNING

- If a fault occurs, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.

PIN to Drive*

- To set a PIN, shift into Park, then go to the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Locks** and follow the on-screen instructions.
- When enabled, this feature requires entering the correct PIN on the infotainment touchscreen before you can shift gears for the first time after the ignition is switched on. If the vehicle anti-theft alarm system is armed because the PIN attempt limit is reached, follow on-screen instructions to disarm the system.
- When you forget the PIN, tap **forget password** and follow the instructions to change it.
- To disable the PIN, tap the settings then input the PIN.

CAUTION

- Be sure to shift into Park before setting the PIN.
- The feature works for unlocking with the smart key or unlocking with the microswitch while carrying the smart key, but not for such operations using the NFC key card* or in the BYD App.
- If you cannot input the PIN after powering on the vehicle due to infotainment touchscreen malfunction or black screen, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

Data Collection and Processing

Data Collection and Processing

- This section provides you with some important information on how personal data is collected and processed when you use a BYD vehicle.
- For a more detailed overview on data processing, data protection and data subject rights, please refer to the current version of the privacy policy available in the infotainment system (⚙ → **System** → **General** → **Legal Information** → **Privacy Statement**).
- This vehicle is equipped with an event data recording (EDR) system. EDR mainly records data in the event of a crash or near-crash (for example, airbag deployment or hitting on a roadside obstacle) to help comprehend the vehicle system operation, such as:
  - Vehicle velocity.
  - Tyre pressure condition
  - Adaptive cruise control (ACC) system status
  - Whether the seat belt is fastened
- The vehicle records EDR data only when there is a crash or when a near-crash event reaches a certain extent. The EDR does not record any data during the normal driving of the vehicle.
  - The data recorded by the EDR system provides an understanding of the state of the vehicle's safety-related systems when an accident occurs, so that relevant parties can analyze the accident.

- The EDR data needs to be accessed and read by special equipment. BYD discloses your personal data to third parties only if this is legally permissible or you have consented to it. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, third-party agencies with professional equipment (such as government agencies) can also read the EDR data if they have access to the vehicle EDR and equipment (for example, they can read the data of SRS control unit to clarify the accident).

Vehicle Data Processing

- Data is collected when the vehicle is used, such as data collected or transmitted by vehicle sensors or control units, which is necessary for the safe functioning of your vehicle.
- In some cases, the data is used to support driving (driver assistance systems) or to enable a specific comfort or infotainment function.
- Personal data that is collected and processed mainly include in-vehicle data, remote-services-related data, and other data, as further specified below.

In-vehicle data

Operation data

- When the vehicle is used, various vehicle status data (e.g., speed, battery level, and braking system) or environment (e.g., distance sensors and temperature) data are collected and processed.
- This data is not usually stored, but there are control units, sensors or other components installed in the vehicle that record such data, for example, to record maintenance requirements, error messages, or other information.
- The in-vehicle data will only be stored in the equipment in the vehicle but can be read out via the legally required OBD ("On Board Diagnostics") interface, for example, by BYD authorised dealer or service provider or other third parties.
- In case this access takes place during vehicle maintenance, the information can also be transmitted to BYD engineers for quality assurance, product defect reports, or customer claim verification.

Remote-services-related data

Remote monitoring services

- The vehicle has remote monitoring services. These include remote diagnosis and over-the-air (OTA) updates and upgrades for security and safety purposes (subject to owner's approval).
- These monitoring services serve the following purposes: service provision (remote support/diagnostics), product development, and security/public safety.
- Depending on the country and setup, various vehicle information can be transmitted to BYD's data centre in corresponding market for the above purposes, including vehicle location information, vehicle status, such as energy consumption, vehicle speed, gear position, power mode, ESC status, steering system status, battery status, powertrain status, and overall vehicle performance status.

Other

Infotainment system

- Depending on vehicle configuration, data can be added to the infotainment system by the users themselves, such as media data for playing video on the infotainment system, address data for

use in the navigation system, or data for online services.

- Depending on vehicle configuration, individual settings in and on the vehicle can also be entered.
- Data stored in the vehicle can be deleted at any time.
- BYD has no control over data transferred to third parties (from the use of third party content, in particular as part of online services).

Integration of mobile devices

- Depending on vehicle configurations, mobile devices can be connected and controlled through the vehicle's infotainment system.
- It may be necessary that the device's screen or audio is displayed/played through the infotainment system or transmitted to it.
- Additional data like positioning or vehicle information can be transmitted through applications for use in certain navigation systems, communication, or other third-party services.
- The type of data processing depends on the respective function and is controlled by the user or third parties that provide the devices or corresponding services.

Internet access and connected services

- Depending on vehicle configurations, the Internet can be accessed for certain functions or BYD services through the vehicle's infotainment system network devices.
- BYD is not liable for any such services provided by any other party.
- In such cases, please obtain information about the use of data from the provider of the respective online service.

Camera image recording and surrounding area monitoring

- Your vehicle is equipped with a number of cameras/sensors.
- The reason for this is that some vehicle functionalities require the vehicle's path to be detected and assessed which is done by cameras that detect objects in the vehicle's surroundings (e.g., obstacles).
- The images are transmitted to the respective control module for further analysis required to operate the systems.
- Some images are only processed on the random access memory (RAM), and others may be stored, depending on vehicle equipment.
- The vehicle may be equipped with an outward-facing camera (OFC) that can be used to take footage of the surrounding (for example, dashcam).
- The vehicle may also be equipped with an inward-facing camera (IFC), which can be used to take footage inside the vehicle.
- Both OFC and IFC footage will be stored.
- You are responsible to check the laws of your residence before turning on your OFC or IFC (for instance, in some countries consent is required for the use of IFC, and in others OFC is strictly restricted to dashcam purposes).
- For more camera details, see section "Panoramic View System" in this manual.

Permanent Vehicle Transfer to Third Parties and Offline Mode

- In case of a permanent vehicle transfer, that is, when you are purchasing a second-hand vehicle or receiving a

vehicle transferred from a third party for permanent use, it must be noted that any personalisation/user settings made via the infotainment system (including the address list and the navigation system) can be accessed by the new owner.

REMINDER

- When the vehicle is being scrapped or transferred, reset the vehicle system to factory settings to protect your personal privacy.

- You can also restrict your vehicle's communication with the BYD data server and the processing of vehicle-related and personal data by setting the vehicle to offline mode.
  - On the infotainment touchscreen, tap  to turn Wi-Fi off.
  - You can also disable Wi-Fi in tapping → **System** → **Connection** → **Wi-Fi** → **OFF**.

Disclosure of Personal Data to Authorities

- BYD will not discloses your personal data to third parties unless this is legally permissible or you have consented to it.
- However, subject to applicable laws, government agencies may be authorised to read out data from vehicles (for example, data can be read from the airbag control unit to clarify an accident).
- If required by law, BYD may also be obliged to disclose data upon request to governmental authorities in your country, such as in the investigation of a criminal offence.

Your Data Protection Rights

- BYD has staunch respect for its customer's privacy, and strictly complies with all data protection laws, in particular the General Data Protection Regulation (GDPR) and applicable local laws.
- According to these laws, owners have specific rights when their personal data is processed:
  - Data subjects have the right of information and access, to rectification, erasure of personal data ("right to be forgotten") and the right to object to the processing of personal data or to restrict it (or to withdraw consent given earlier, as well as the right to data portability).
- These rights may be limited in some cases. For example, if we can show that we have a legal obligation to process your data, or if providing the information to you would disclose personal data about another person, or if we are legally prevented from disclosing that information.
- In some cases, this may mean that we can retain the data even if you withdraw your consent.
- For more information on data processing, data protection, and any rights you may have, please visit the latest version of the Privacy Policy available at the infotainment system.

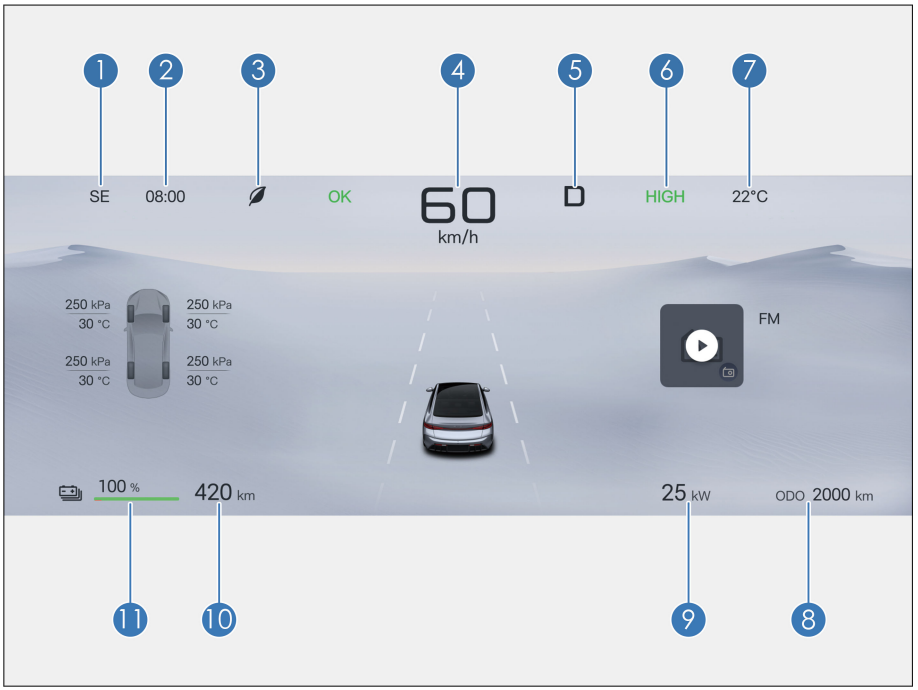
02 INSTRUMENT CLUSTER

Instrument Cluster.....36

Instrument Cluster

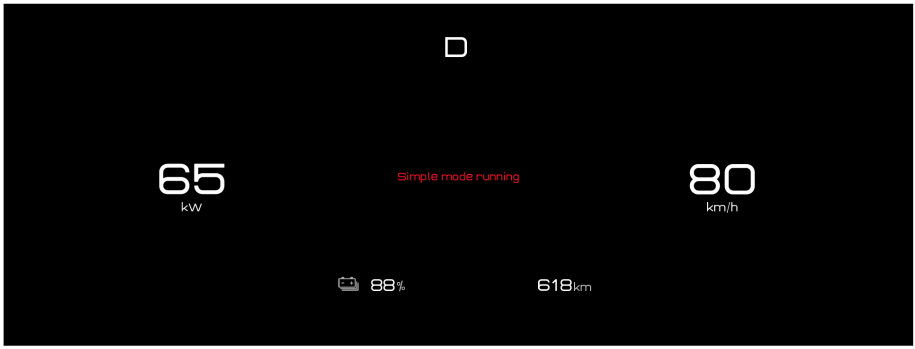
Instrument Cluster

LCD Instrument Cluster



1 Direction
2 Time
3 Driving mode
4 Speedometer
5 Gear status
6 Regenerative braking
7 Outside temperature
8 Total mileage
9 Power meter
10 Driving range
11 State of charge (SOC)

Instrument cluster view in simple mode



CAUTION

- During occasional communication delays in the instrument cluster system, the instrument cluster may automatically switch to simple mode for safe driving. In this mode, the instrument cluster continues to display driving related information normally without affecting normal vehicle travel. After the system becomes normal, the instrument cluster may automatically exit the simple mode. If it does not, try the following actions to switch back to normal mode:

  1. Press and hold the scroll button on auxiliary dashboard for three seconds to restart the instrument cluster information display system.

CAUTION

  2. While safety is ensured, restart the vehicle.

- If the instrument cluster remains in simple mode after those actions have been taken, promptly contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for inspection.
- The image of the instrument cluster view is for reference only and is subject to actual factory configuration.

Instrument Cluster Indicators

Indicators/Warning Lights

Indicator Light Icon	Indicator Light Name	Indicator Light Icon	Indicator Light Name
	Turn signal indicator		Position light indicator

Indicator Light Icon	Indicator Light Name	Indicator Light Icon	Indicator Light Name
	OK indicator		Discharge indicator
	AVH indicator		Hill descend control indicator
	Low beam indicator		Intelligent high beam indicator
	Intelligent Cruise Control Indicator		High beam indicator
	BSD fault warning light		Intelligent Cruise Control fault warning light
	High-voltage battery low SOC warning light		AEB fault warning light
	LDA fault warning light		Rear fog light indicator
	Tyre pressure fault warning light		Smart key warning light
	ESC OFF warning light		Main alarm indicator
	ESC fault warning light		Headlight fault warning light
	ABS fault warning light		Driving power limit warning light
	ACC fault warning light		High-voltage battery fault warning light

Indicator Light Icon	Indicator Light Name	Indicator Light Icon	Indicator Light Name
	High-voltage battery charging connection indicator		Steering system fault warning light
	AEB warning light		High-voltage battery overheating warning light
	Motor overheating warning light		Coolant overheating indicator
	Powertrain fault warning light		Parking brake system fault warning light
	Seat belt reminder indicator		Airbag fault warning light
	EPB indicator		Low-voltage power system fault warning light
	TSR indicator		Comfort mode indicator
	Economy mode indicator		Sport mode indicator

Indicators/Warning Lights Description

 Smart key warning light

- If the key is not in the vehicle when you press the START/STOP button, this warning light comes on for a few seconds, a beep sounds, and the message "No key detected, please confirm if the key is in the vehicle" is displayed on the instrument cluster.
- If you press the START/STOP button while an electronic smart key matching the model is in the vehicle, this warning light does not light up. The vehicle can now be powered on.
- If the warning light flashes after you press the START/STOP button, it indicates low battery of the key.
- If the key is not in the vehicle, the instrument cluster prompts "No key detected, please confirm if the key is in the vehicle".

 ABS fault warning light

- This warning light comes on when the ignition is on. If the anti-lock braking system (ABS) is working properly, the light goes out in a few seconds.

Thereafter, if the system fails, the light lights up again until the fault is cleared.

- When the ABS fault warning light is on (with the parking system fault warning light off), the braking system continues to operate whereas the ABS does not.
- When the ABS fault warning light is on (with the parking brake system fault warning light off), since ABS does not operate, the wheels will be locked in case of emergency braking or braking on a slippery road.
- If any of the following cases occurs, there is a fault in components monitored by the warning light system. In that case, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for vehicle inspection as soon as possible.
  - This warning light does not come on or is steady on when the ignition is on.
  - This warning light turns on during driving.

REMINDER

- A warning light that lights up briefly during operation does not indicate a problem.
- If the ABS fault warning light is still on while the parking brake system fault warning light is on, immediately park the vehicle in a safe place. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider. In this case, if brakes are applied, the ABS will not work and the vehicle will become extremely unstable.

- If both the ABS warning light and braking system warning lights go on after the Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) is released, it indicates that the electronic brake-force distribution (EBD) system of the front and rear tyres has also failed.



Tyre pressure fault warning light

- This warning light comes on when the ignition is on. It turns off in a few seconds if the tyre pressure monitoring system is working properly. If the system fails, this warning light turns on again.
- When the tyre pressure fault warning light comes on or flashes, the message "Please check TPMS" is displayed on the instrument cluster, and the tyre pressure is displayed as "---", it indicates that the tyre pressure system is faulty.
- When the tyre pressure value displays "No Signal", it indicates that the tyre pressure signal at this location may be interfered or the tyre pressure monitoring module is damaged.
- When the tyre pressure fault warning light flashes rapidly and one or more values turn red on the tyre pressure screen on the instrument cluster, the corresponding tyre is leaking rapidly.
- When the tyre pressure fault warning light is solid on and one or more values turn yellow on the tyre pressure screen on the instrument cluster, the corresponding tyre is in under-pressure condition. When the temperature value of one or more tyres turns yellow, it indicates that the tyre temperature is too high.

In the event of any of the situations above, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible.



ESC fault warning light

- This warning light comes on when the ignition is on. If Electronic Stability Controller (ESC) functions properly, the light goes out in a few seconds. If the system fails, this warning light turns on again until the system fault is cleared.
- If the ESC warning light flashes temporarily while the vehicle is in motion, it indicates the ESC system is working.
- When the ESC warning light turns on (with the ABS fault warning light and the parking system fault warning light off), the ESC fails, but the ABS and the braking system continue to operate normally.
- When the ESC warning light turns on (with the ABS fault warning light and the parking system fault warning light off), the ESC system does not work. This means the vehicle is extremely unstable at sharp turns or when the driver steers away from obstacles ahead.
- If any of the following cases occurs, it means there is a fault in components monitored by the warning light system. In that case, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for vehicle inspection as soon as possible.
  - This warning light remains off (self-check not performed) after the vehicle is powered on.
  - This warning light is steady on while driving.

REMINDER

- A warning light that lights up briefly during operation does not indicate a problem.
- If the ESC warning light remains on while the warning lights for the ABS and the braking system are on, immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider. This is because braking at this time can render the vehicle extremely unstable, and the anti-lock braking system does not work at all.



ESC OFF warning light

- When the ESC OFF switch is pressed, this warning light should remain steady on and the ESC system will not operate. When the ESC OFF switch is pressed again, this warning light should turn off and the ESC system resumes its normal operation.

REMINDER

- While the ESC OFF warning light is on, the driver must stay alert and keep driving at a lower speed when making a sharp turn and when avoiding an obstacle which appears suddenly. because braking at this time can render the vehicle unstable, as the ESC system is switched OFF.



Driving power limit warning light

- When the power of the vehicle is limited, this indicator will come on. In this case, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider in time.



Headlight fault warning light

- When the warning light is yellow, it indicates the headlight is faulty, and it is recommended to bring the vehicle

to a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for inspection.



Blind spot detection (BSD) indicator

- When this indicator is on, it is recommended to bring the vehicle to a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for inspection.



Main alarm indicator

- If this indicator goes on, check the fault prompt or warning on the instrument cluster.



Seat belt reminder

- With the ignition switched on, if any passenger on the front seats or rear* seats has not buckled up, the seat belt reminder indicator lights up. It remains on until the seat belt is fastened.



Airbag fault warning light

- With the ignition switched on, this warning light turns on and then goes off in a few seconds if the airbag system is working properly. This warning light is used to monitor the airbag ECU, collision sensors, inflation device, warning lights, connections, and power supply.
- If any of the following cases occurs, it means there is a fault in components monitored by the warning light system. In that case, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for vehicle inspection as soon as possible.
  - When the ignition is switched on, this warning light remains off or is solid on after the ignition is switched on.
  - This warning light turns on during driving.



Parking system fault warning light

- When the brake fluid level is low and the braking system is faulty, this warning light lights up. If any of the following conditions occurs, immediately park the vehicle in a safe place. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
  - This warning light comes on when the ignition is switched on and the brake fluid level is low.
  - This warning light is solid on although after starting the vehicle, the brake fluid level and EPB system operation are normal (the EPB is engaged and released normally, and the message "Please check the EPB" is not displayed).A brief illumination is a normal phenomenon.
  - Both the parking brake fault warning light and the ABS fault warning light are on.

REMINDER

- When the brake fluid level is low, park the vehicle because it is dangerous to continue driving.



Steering system fault warning light

- When the steering system is faulty, this warning light is steady on. It is recommended to bring the vehicle to a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for inspection.

REMINDER

- The steering system features an electric motor to reduce the force required to turn the steering wheel.
- When turning the steering wheel, a hum may be heard from the running motor. This does not indicate that the motor is faulty.
- Do not turn the steering wheel to its limit position for more than five seconds, otherwise the activation of temperature protection will result in heavy steering or damage the steering system.

- If you have turned the steering wheel frequently with the vehicle staying put for a long time, the steering wheel may become difficult to turn even if the warning light does not turn on. This is not a fault.
  - To prevent steering system overheating, the power assist effect will be redcued if the steering wheel has been frequently turned with the vehicle staying put for a long time. As a result, the steering wheel become difficult to turn. In this case, reduce steering frequency or power off the vehicle. The system will recover within 10 minutes.

WARNING

- If the steering system warning light goes on, immediately park the vehicle safely, and contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.


Zero position indicator light

- If the vehicle loses power due to abnormal operations such as connecting/disconnecting low-voltage batteries or fuses, when the power supply of the vehicle is restored, the zero position indicator light on the instrument cluster is displayed.
  - In this case, it is necessary to perform zero self-learning operation of the steering wheel angle, namely: Turn the steering wheel slowly and fully to the left and right respectively, and release it after 2-5s. Then shut down the engine and wait for over 10s. Restart the vehicle, the indicator light disappears, the learning is over.


Low-voltage power system fault warning light

- If this warning light turns on while driving, it indicates that there is a problem with the DC system or the low-voltage power system. Turn off devices such as the A/C, fan, and radio, and pull over the vehicle immediately if it is safe to do so. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for rescue as soon as possible.


Powertrain fault warning light

- If the powertrain fails, this warning light turns on.
- If any of the following cases occurs, it means there is a fault in components monitored by the warning light system. In that case, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for vehicle inspection as soon as possible.
  - This warning light is steady on when the ignition is switched on.
  - This warning light turns on during driving.

CAUTION

- Try not to drive the vehicle when the warning light is on. Contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider to check the problem as soon as possible.



High-voltage battery overheating warning light

- If this warning light is on, it indicates that the high-voltage battery temperature is too high and the vehicle must be stopped to cool down. When the warning light flashes, it is recommended to immediately stop the vehicle safely and leave the vehicle as soon as possible.
- The high-voltage battery may overheat under the following operating conditions:
  - Driving up a slope for a long time in hot weather.
  - Long period of stop-and-go traffic condition, frequent rapid acceleration, frequent hard braking, or vehicle running for a long time without pause.



High-voltage battery fault warning light

- This warning light comes on when the ignition has just been switched on. If the high-voltage battery system is working properly, this warning light will turn off in a few seconds. If this light lights up again thereafter, it indicates a system failure. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible.
- If any of the following cases occurs, it means that there are faults in the components monitored by the warning light system. In such case, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for vehicle inspection as soon as possible.
  - This warning light is steady on when the ignition is on.
  - This warning light is steady on or occasionally turns on while driving.



AEB warning light

- When this indicator is on or flashes, pay attention to the distance from the vehicle ahead, and do not get too close to it to prevent potential collision.



Coolant overheating indicator

- If this indicator is solid on, it indicates that the coolant temperature is too high. Park the vehicle in a safe area until this indicator goes out.



Traffic sign recognition (TSR) indicator

- When this indicator lights up, it means that the vehicle system has recognised the speed limit value on current road section.

Other Instrument Cluster Fault Prompts

The instrument cluster may display the following fault prompts. Handle them as recommended.

Symbol	Fault Prompt	Response
	Please check the OBC system	The on-board charging system is faulty. Check the charging connection, and reconnect the charging equipment. If the fault persists, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
	Please check the data network of the vehicle.	The vehicle may be disconnected from the data network. In this case, park the vehicle immediately at a safe place, and contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
	Please check the Memory System*	The memory system is faulty. Contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
	EV power limited	The EV function is limited. Contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider immediately.
	Please check the headlamp system	The headlight is faulty. Contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
	ADAS function limited	The AEB system is faulty. In this case, park the vehicle, and contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
	ADAS function limited	The blind spot assist system is faulty. In this case, park the vehicle, and contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
	ADAS function limited	The lane departure assist system is faulty. In this case, park the vehicle, and contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
	Please check the gear system	The shifter controller is faulty. Park the vehicle immediately, and contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.

03 CONTROLLER OPERATION

Doors and Keys.....48
Seats.....62
Steering Wheel.....67
Wipers..... 70
Rearview Mirrors.....72
Switches.....73

Doors and Keys

Keys

The vehicle is equipped with keys, including the electronic smart key, mechanical key (installed in the electronic smart key), Bluetooth digital key*, NFC key*, and to enable functions such as unlocking/locking doors and starting the vehicles.

Electronic Smart Key

Lock or unlock all doors by pressing the driver's door microswitch while carrying the electronic smart key. Buttons on the key help you lock or unlock doors, open the boot, and start the vehicle remotely.

① Lock button

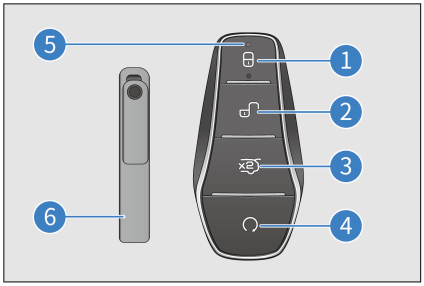
② Unlock button

③ Boot release button

④ Start/Stop button

⑤ Indicator

⑥ Mechanical key



WARNING

Button battery safety alert:

WARNING

- The button (coin) battery in the smart key is hazardous and both new and used batteries are to be kept away from children at all times.
- If swallowed or placed inside any part of the body, a lithium button battery can cause severe or fatal injuries in two hours or less.
- Medical attention should be sought immediately if it is suspected the button battery has been swallowed or placed inside any part of the body.

CAUTION

- The electronic smart key is an electronic component. The following instructions should be observed to prevent damage to the electronic smart key.
  - Do not place the smart key in a position exposed to high temperature, such as on the dashboard.
  - Do not tamper with the smart key.
  - Do not hit other objects with the smart key or drop it.
  - Do not immerse the key in water or clean it in the ultrasonic scrubber.
  - Do not place smart keys with devices that emit electromagnetic waves, such as the mobile phone.
  - Do not attach any objects (such as a metal seal) which cut off electromagnetic wave signals when using the card.

CAUTION

- You can register a spare key for the same car. In this case, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider immediately.

- If the electronic smart key cannot operate the door within the normal distance, or the key indicator light is dim or off:
  - Check for nearby radio stations or airport radio transmitters that interfere with the normal operation of electronic smart keys.
  - The battery of an electronic smart key may be exhausted. Check the battery inside the electronic smart key. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible.
- If you lose your smart key, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider as soon as possible to reduce the risk of vehicle theft or accidents.
- Do not change the transmission frequency arbitrarily, increase the transmission power (including additional transmission frequency amplifier), do not arbitrarily connect the external detection antenna or switch other transmitting detection antennas.
- Do not cause harmful interference to legitimate radio communication services when used; once there is interference, stop using and mining immediately.
- The use of micropower radio equipment must be free from

CAUTION

interference of all radio services or from radiation of equipments for industrial, scientific and medical applications.

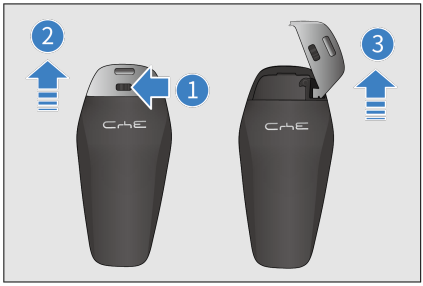
- When leaving the vehicle, always carry your key and lock the vehicle. Never leave people (especially children) alone in the vehicle.
- People implanted with pacemakers or defibrilators should stay away from the detection antennas of intelligent entry and start systems, as electromagnetic waves can affect the normal use of such devices. In addition to people implanted with pacemakers or defibrilators, those who use other electronic medical devices should also consult the manufacturer on the use of such devices under the influence of electromagnetic waves. Electromagnetic waves may bring unknown consequences to the use of such medical devices.

Mechanical key

Use the mechanical key (inside the smart key) to lock or unlock the driver's door. When the key is not used, be sure to insert the mechanical key back into the smart key.

Taking out the mechanical key

When using the mechanical key in the electronic smart key, slide the lock-up button in the direction of arrow ① and push the back cover of the smart key in the direction of arrow ②, hook the head hole of the mechanical key with the projection parts at both ends of the back cover of smart key and pull it in the direction of arrow ③ to take out the mechanical key, as shown in the figure.



- After using the mechanical key, insert it in the opposite direction of arrow ③ and close the back cover of the smart key. The mechanical key can only be inserted in one direction.

Bluetooth Digital Key*

- Use the Bluetooth digital key to control the vehicle through a close-range Bluetooth connection, including locking/unlocking the doors and so on.
- Download and install the latest version of the BYD app from the app store. The app integrates the BYD Bluetooth digital key functionality.
- If you are using a vehicle equipped with the Bluetooth digital key function, follow these steps to set up the key near the vehicle:

  1. Open the BYD app.
  2. Switch on the Bluetooth of your phone.
  3. Select the associated vehicle.
  4. To activate the Bluetooth Key, set up Bluetooth Digital Key on the Vehicle Page.

- Turn on the Bluetooth on your phone, approach the vehicle, and open the BYD App for automatic Bluetooth digital key connection. You can also connect it manually. The key is effective after Bluetooth is connected.
- The specific functions supported by the key are subject to the vehicle configuration. The Bluetooth Key function uses wireless communication to send control signals to the vehicle, without needing mobile network support.
- For best performance, when starting the vehicle, approach the driver's side to use the Bluetooth Digital Key.
- In some countries or regions, according to relevant regulations, when a user starts the vehicle with the Bluetooth key, the vehicle will detect the position of the Bluetooth digital key. The vehicle can be started only when it detects that the key is within a specific range around it to ensure the vehicle property safety.
- If you unpair the vehicle or deactivate your BYD Cloud, the Bluetooth Digital Key will be removed.

⚠ CAUTION

- Before activating the Bluetooth key, ensure that the vehicle network signal is good. If the activation fails, try to move the vehicle to a place with good network or restart the vehicle, and activate the key again in App.
- After the vehicle is unlocked with a Bluetooth digital key, the doors may be locked automatically if there is no operation in a short time.
- When the Bluetooth key connection or operation fails for many times, you can turn the Bluetooth off and then on, or restart the application.
- Limited by the vehicle environment and mobile phone performance, the effective

CAUTION

distance of the key will be reduced in case of dense vehicles.

- Switch on the Bluetooth and positioning of your phone before using the key, and contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider if a problem occurs.

NFC Key Card*

- The NFC card is a key configured for the vehicle based on the near field communication method to unlock, lock, and start the vehicle.
- Place the valid NFC key at the mark on the driver's side mirror to unlock/lock all the doors.
- After entering the vehicle, place the NFC key in the NFC area of the exterior side mirror to authorize the start of the vehicle.

CAUTION

- NFC key card is an electronic product. The following instructions must be observed to prevent function failure of or damage to the card:
  - Do not place the NFC card in the charging area when the wireless charger is on.
  - Do not attach any objects (such as a metal seal, and metal phone back shell) which cut off electromagnetic wave signals when using the card.
  - Do not place the card in a position exposed to high temperature, such as on the dashboard.
  - Do not bend the card with force.
  - Do not place the card with other hard objects.
- NFC key cards use near-field communication technology, requiring a detection distance of less than 0.78 in (2 cm). Hold your NFC card close to the side mirror for 1-2 seconds.
- It is recommended that you always carry your NFC key cards to avoid being unable to use the vehicle due to the phone being turned off, the phone is lost, or the electronic key is invalid or lost.
- The NFC smart card is a key configured for the vehicle based on the near field communication method. In order to ensure vehicle safety, handle it with care. If it is lost, immediately contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for blocking of the lost card and configuration of the new card.

NFC Digital Key*

- NFC digital key is a function provided by BYD for users. You can register smartphones or wearable devices as vehicle keys to unlock, lock, and start the vehicle.
- Before activating the NFC digital key, observe the following conditions:
  - You have registered BYD Cloud Service for the vehicle.
  - The vehicle supports NFC digital key.
  - Your smartphone or wearable device supports BYD NFC digital key (contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for device compatibility).

Activating the NFC digital key on smartphones

Before activating, start the vehicle and shift into "P" with a valid smart key. You can activate the NFC digital key in these ways:

- Via BYD App:
  - Please go to the mobile APP store to download BYD APP, and complete registration and login. Navigate to **Digital Key** and follow the instructions to activate the key.

Activating the NFC digital key on wearable devices

Supported wearable devices include Apple Watch (consult a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for other supported wearable devices), and there are two ways for activating:

- Synchronise the key from iPhone to Apple Watch:
  - After successful key activation on iPhone, the device prompts to add the NFC digital key to a paired Apple Watch which is nearby and unlocked. Follow the prompts to complete activation.
- Via the Watch app:
  - This method is applicable when the iPhone digital key is activated but not synchronised to the Apple Watch. Open the Watch on the iPhone, select "Wallet", find the corresponding key and tap "Add" to activate the key according to the instructions.

Using the NFC digital key

When using the NFC digital key, enable the NFC function of the mobile phone or wearable device. Here is how to use:

- Carry a mobile phone or wearable device with a valid NFC digital key, put its NFC antenna area close to the NFC sign on the driver's side mirror, and unlock or lock the vehicle. Consult the manufacturers for details of the NFC antenna area.
- Place the mobile phone or wearable device at the NFC sign located at the side mirror of the vehicle to obtain the vehicle start permission.

CAUTION

- With permission, start the vehicle as soon as possible. Or you need to place the device at the NFC sign located at the side mirror of the vehicle again to reauthorise.

Removing the NFC digital key

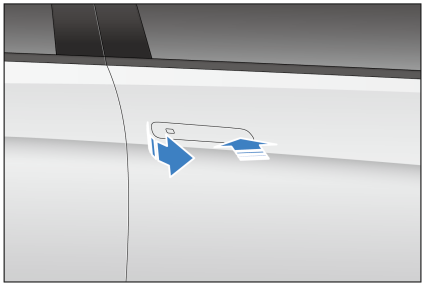
There are two ways:

- Via the BYD app:
  - Open the BYD app and navigate to the digital key management screen, select the key to remove, and enter the password to remove it.
- Via the Wallet app:
  - Open the Wallet on the phone, select the digital key, and remove it according to the instructions.

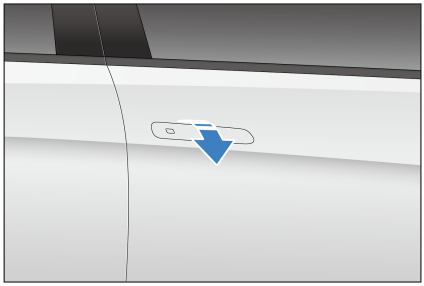
Locking/Unlocking Doors

Locking/Unlocking with Mechanical Key

1. Push the left side of a hidden door handle, and turn the right side to get a finger height, holding it by a hand.

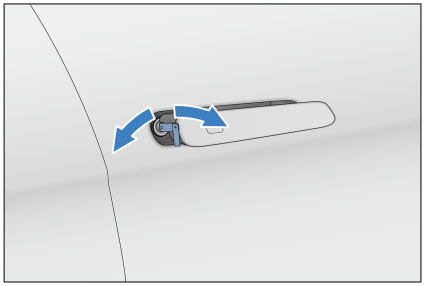


2. Once the left side is extended, pull the middle of the handle outward to extend the handle.



3. Pull the driver's door handle to its maximum angle. Insert, turn, and then pull out the mechanical key. Pull on the door handle to open the door.

- Turn the key counterclockwise.
- Turn the key clockwise.

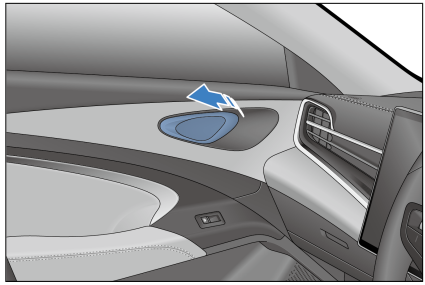


CAUTION

- After removing the mechanical key, pull the main door handle to open the door.

Opening with Interior Door Handle

- When the vehicle is unlocked, pull the handle once to open the door from inside the vehicle.
- When the vehicle is locked, pull the handle twice to open the door from inside the vehicle.



WARNING

- Do not allow children to play with the door handle, so as to avoid the door opening while driving
- If there are children in the vehicle, make sure to enable the child protection lock function.

CAUTION

- The interior door handle is mechanically linked to the door latch and remains operational even when the vehicle is powered off.
- As this vehicle is equipped with child protection locks, the rear doors can only be opened with

⚠ CAUTION

the interior handle when the child protection locks are disabled.

Locking/Unlocking with Smart Key

- The wireless remote control is used to unlock or lock all doors at a close distance, and complete additional functions.
- In the active area, press the associated button on the registered smart key slowly and firmly to lock or unlock all doors.

Locking:

- When all the doors, the bonnet and the boot are closed, press the lock button to lock all the doors. The hidden door handles fold automatically. If the vehicle is shut down, the side mirrors will fold (when the Auto-Fold is enabled) with turn signals flashing once. If the ignition has not been switched off, the side mirrors will not fold, the turn signals will not flash, and the alarm will sound once. Check whether all doors are securely locked.



  - If any door is unlocked, the side mirrors do not fold, the turn signals do not flash, the door handles do not fold and the alarm sounds once.
  - If the bonnet or boot is not closed, the side mirrors do not fold*, the turn signals do not flash, and the alarm sounds once.

Unlocking:

- Press the unlock button. All doors are unlocked, the hidden door handles* automatically extend, and the turn signal flashes twice.
- Unlocking all doors with the smart key may turn on interior lights and keep them on for 15 seconds then go out (when the interior light "DOOR" switched is turned on on the infotainment touchscreen), even if no door is opened.
- If the anti-theft alarm system is armed, open any door within 30 seconds after unlocking with the smart key, or all doors will relock automatically and the four door handles retract*.

Finding the Vehicle with Smart Key

- With the anti-theft alarm system armed, pressing the lock button sounds a beep and makes turn signals flash 15 times. Use this function to locate the vehicle when it cannot be found.
- When the vehicle is in car search mode, press the lock button again. The vehicle enters the next car search mode.

Raising/Lowering Windows with Smart Key*

- Switch the ignition off.
  - Press and hold the lock button on the smart key to raise the four windows.
  - Press and hold the unlock button on the smart key to lower the four windows.
- To enable or disable key fob unlocking/locking/opening/closing window functions, go to the

infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Locks** → **Windows**. (Configurations of the actual vehicle prevail.)

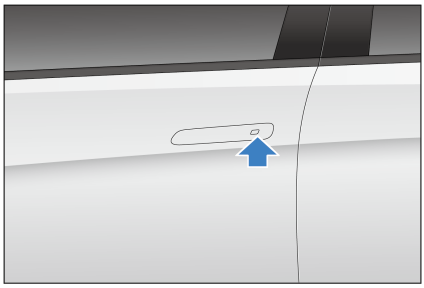
CAUTION

- When using the remote control function to raise windows, pay attention to the safety of occupants in the vehicle, and use this function only after making sure the windows are clear from pinching anyone.

Locking/Unlocking with Microswitch

Locking

- When the doors are closed but unlocked, press the front door handle microswitch while carrying the smart key to unlock all doors, then all doors close concurrently. At this time, the hidden door handles retract automatically. If the ignition is off, the side mirrors fold in (when the switch is set to AUTO), and the turn signal flashes once. If the ignition has not been switched off, the side mirrors will not fold, the turn signals will not flash, and the alarm will sound once.



- If any door is not closed, the side mirrors do not fold, the turn signals do not flash, the door handles do not fold and the alarm sounds once.
- If the engine compartment or boot is not closed, the side mirrors do not fold*, the turn signals do not flash, and the alarm sounds once.

Unlocking

- When doors are locked, press the microswitch on the front door handle while carrying the smart key. All doors unlock concurrently. The hidden door handle extends automatically and the turn signal flashes twice.
- If the anti-theft alarm system is armed, open a door within 30 seconds after the unlocking. Otherwise, all doors will be locked automatically again and the four door handles retract*.
- Pressing the microswitch does not work if:
  - This is performed while a door is being opened or closed.
  - The key is in the vehicle.

REMINDER

- If the smart key is too close to an exterior door handle or window, it may not be possible to activate the entry function.

Raising/Lowering Windows with Microswitch

- With the ignition off, press and hold the microswitch while carrying the smart key to roll up or down all windows (By default, lifting the window function is activated and lowering the window function is disabled).
- To enable or disable microswitch window locking and closing/unlocking and opening functions, go to infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Locks** → **Windows**.

Locking/Unlocking the Boot

Opening the boot with smart key

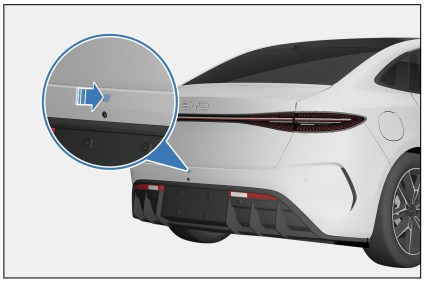
Double-press the boot release button on the smart key. The turn signals then flash twice.

- Lockout prevention function
  - If the key is placed in the vehicle or in the boot with the vehicle locked, when you close the boot, the vehicle automatically unlocks and turn signals flash twice.



Unlocking the boot with microswitch

- With the vehicle locked, press the rear microswitch while carrying a valid key to unlock the boot.
- With the vehicle unlocked, press the rear microswitch to open the boot.



Opening the boot from inside

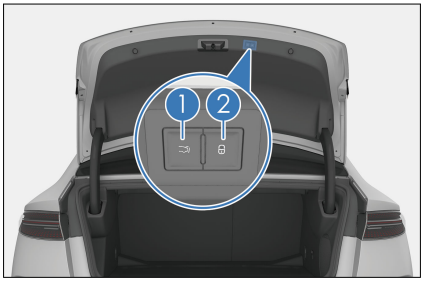
With the vehicle unlocked, pull up the electrical boot lid button.

- If the vehicle speed is greater than 2 mph (3 km/h), the boot cannot be opened by pulling up the button.



① Boot close button*

- When the boot lid is open and stationary, press the boot closing button to close this lid.
- Press the boot close button a second time to stop the lid at the current position. If the button is then pressed again, this lid will move in the opposite direction.



② Vehicle lock button*

- With the vehicle power switched off and the boot open, press the lock switch while carrying a valid smart key to close the boot and lock the vehicle, and the vehicle enters anti-theft mode.

REMINDER

- Before closing the boot, verify that the doors, windows, sunroof, etc. are closed to avoid property loss.

Setting boot opening height*

- Open the boot manually or automatically to the desired position, keep it at this position, and then press and hold the interior boot button for over three seconds. The speaker sounds for one second, indicating that the opening height is successfully set to the current position.
- Set the tailgate opening height by going to infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Locks** → **Doors**.

Anti-pinch function

If the lid receives a hindering force while it is closing, it will automatically switch to the opposite direction. If it receives a hindering force while it is opening, it will halt.

When the boot fails to act automatically

Manually and completely close the boot for recovery.

When reconnecting the low-voltage battery

Manually close the boot to ensure the power boot lid functions normally.

WARNING

- In order to prevent serious injury, make sure to observe the following precautions:
  - Never deliberately activate the anti-pinch function with any part of your body.
  - Make sure to alert people nearby of the lid motion.
  - Make sure hands and fingers are clear from the lid area when it is closing.

WARNING

- Make sure the surrounding area is safe when opening or closing the boot.
- Make sure the boot is properly closed when the vehicle is in motion.
- Make sure to remove any ice or snow from the area before opening the boot. otherwise the lid may close again.
- Do not manually interfere in lid motion when it is opening or closing.
- Be mindful of windy conditions when opening or closing the boot.
- The anti-pinch function may fail to work if an object is caught right before the boot is fully closed.
- The lid may start closing before fully opening. Opening or closing the boot on slopes is more difficult than on level ground. Be mindful of the possibility of the lid to move on its own in such conditions. Before loading or unloading the boot, make sure the lid is fully open and secure.
- The anti-pinch function may fail depending on the object shape. Be especially careful about hand and fingers.

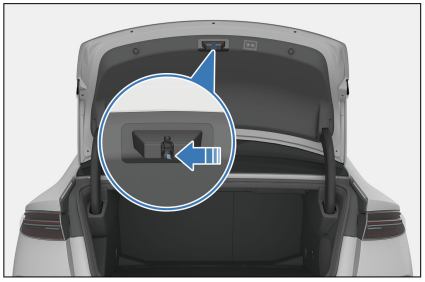
Emergency Boot Releasing from Inside

Emergency unlocking of the boot can be achieved by

1. Pull up the folding release clasp on the seatback to fold the rear seat back.



2. 2. There is an emergency unlocking mechanism on the lid cover, open the lid cover in the car by pulling the emergency opening lever on the left (as shown in the figure).



REMINDER

- When the vehicle is powered off, the boot can be unlocked from inside the vehicle.

Locking/Unlocking with NFC Key Card*

Locking doors

When doors are closed but unlocked, hold the NFC key close to the designated area on the driver's side mirror. All doors can then be locked at the same time. The turn signals flash once when the vehicle is powered off.



Unlocking doors

When doors are locked, hold the NFC key close to the designated area on the driver's side mirror. Then all doors can be unlocked at the same time. The turn signals flash twice.

- Putting the NFC key close to the NFC mark on the side mirror on the driver's side does not work if:
  - This is performed while the door is opened or closed.

WARNING

- The keyless start permission lasts for up to four minutes.

REMINDER

- If the anti-theft alarm system is armed, open a door within 30 seconds after the unlocking with the NFC key. Otherwise, all the doors will relock automatically.
- After unlocking by NFC key, the user can start the vehicle without the key in a stipulated period, while this will be disabled after legal locking.

Locking/Unlocking with Central Locking

Locking or unlocking with central locking

See ***P76*** in this chapter.

Locking or unlocking doors automatically

- All doors automatically lock at vehicle speeds above 5 mph (8 km/h).
- Press the START/STOP button to switch the ignition off. Then, all doors are unlocked automatically.

Locking and unlocking all doors concurrently

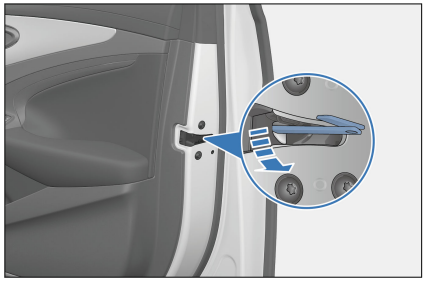
- When the vehicle is not in anti-theft mode, the backlight of the central lock button turns on if the vehicle is locked and turns off if the vehicle is unlocked.
- Pressing the central lock button locks all doors so that any attempt to open any door from the outside fails. At this time, pull the interior door handle to unlock a door and pull a second time to open it.

REMINDER

- All doors unlock automatically when the vehicle suffers a strong impact, depending on the impact intensity and accident type.

Emergency Vehicle Locking with Mechanical Key

- When the centre console lock fails, lock the driver door with the mechanical key. Use the key to turn the emergency locking knobs of the other three doors counterclockwise to the locked state, and then close the doors. At this time, the entyre vehicle has been locked so that doors cannot be opened with any of the four exterior door handles.
- To unlock the doors, unlock the driver door with the mechanical key first, enter the vehicle, then pull other door handles twice to open the doors.



REMINDER

- Prevent excessive force from distorting or breaking the key during the operation.

Smart Access and Start System

Use the smart key to unlock or lock the vehicle doors and start the vehicle.

Access

Use the smart key to lock or unlock the vehicle doors (see ***P54*** and ***P55*** in this chapter).

REMINDER

- If the electronic smart key is too close to an exterior door handle or window, it may not be possible to activate the entry function.

Start-up

With the smart key inside, press the brake pedal and the START/STOP button to start the vehicle. (See ***P111***.)

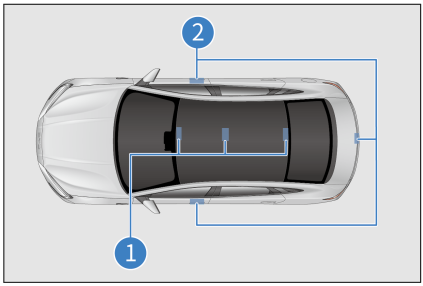
CAUTION

- Do not touch the power button while driving.

Antenna Positions

① Interior antenna

② Exterior antenna



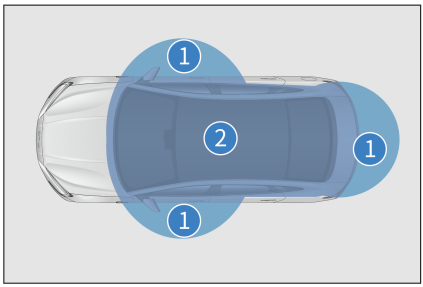
Active Area

The smart access and start functions take effect only when the registered smart key is within the active area.

① Active area of the access function: about 1.1 yd (1 m) from the front door handle and the exterior boot switch.

② Active area of the start function: inside the cabin.

If another smart key is near this vehicle's smart key, unlocking may take longer than usual, which is normal.



REMINDER

In the following situation, smart access and start system may not work normally:

- There is a strong electromagnetic field nearby, such as TV towers, power stations, and broadcasting stations.
- The smart key is being carried along with a communication device, such as a two-way radio or mobile phone.
- The smart key is in contact with or covered by a metal object.
- The door handle is operated too quickly.
- Another wireless remote control function is being used nearby.
- When the smart key battery runs out.
- The smart key is close to high-voltage equipment or equipment that produces noise.
- The smart key is being carried along with another smart key or radio-wave-emitting device.
- Even within the active area, the smart key may not work properly in certain locations, for example, on the dashboard, in the glove box, or on the floor.

- If the smart access system is not working properly and it is impossible to enter the vehicle, the mechanical key can be used to lock/unlock the driver's door, or the wireless remote control function can be used to lock/unlock all doors.
- Pressing the Start/Stop button may not enable the start function due to:

- If the electronic smart key does not work, the smart key system warning indicator on the combination instrument flashes, and the message "Low key battery" is displayed on the information display screen in the middle of the combination instrument, indicating that the key battery may have run out.

- If the smart access and start system cannot work properly due to system failures, bring all smart keys to a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for repair.

Saving battery power

- The smart key communicates with the vehicle even when the vehicle is not running. Therefore, do not leave the smart key in the vehicle or within 2.2 yd (2 meters) from the vehicle.

- Receiving strong electromagnetic waves for a long time drains the battery of the smart key quickly. The smart key must be kept at least 1.1 yd (1 meter) away from the following devices, for example:

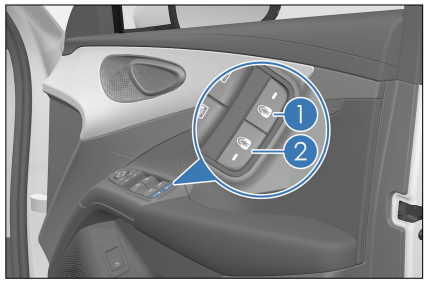
  - Television
  - Personal computer
  - Phone charger
  - Electroliers
  - Fluorescent desk lamp

Child Protection Lock

- Child protection locks are designed to prevent children in rear seats from accidentally opening rear doors. Such locks are provided on the driver's door switches.

① Child protection lock for the rear right door

② Child protection lock for the rear left door



- To activate child protection locks, press the child protection lock button ① or ②. The corresponding indicator lights up. At this time, the occupants cannot open the rear door on the corresponding side. To unlock the door, press the child protection lock button for the corresponding side again or use the exterior door handle.

WARNING

- Before driving, especially when a child is in the vehicle, ensure that the doors are closed and the child protection lock function is enabled.

- Proper use of seat belts and activation of child protection lock helps prevent the driver and passengers from being thrown out of the vehicle in an accident. and also prevents a door from being opened accidentally.

- After the child protection lock is locked, doors cannot be opened from inside the car, and the window switch for the corresponding rear door cannot be used to raise or lower the window.

Seats

Seat Precautions

- Adjust the driver's seat so that the pedals, steering wheel, and dashboard controls are within the driver's easy control.
- While driving, the most effective safeguard is to keep the seatback upright, always rest well on the seatback, and adjust the seat belt to the right position.
- Do not fold or unfold the rear seats when the vehicle is in motion.
- Secure your luggage appropriately to prevent it from skidding or moving. Luggage in the vehicle should not be higher than seatbacks.
- The head support can only protect your head when it is in the proper position. Remember to adjust it to the proper position if it has been moved.

WARNING

- Sitting on a folded seatback, in the trunk, or on cargo is prohibited. Improper seating position or improperly fastened seat belts can result in personal injury in case of emergency braking or a collision.
- Do not place any items under the seats. The driver may lose control of the vehicle because items placed there affect the seat locking mechanism, causing the seat to move suddenly.
- When adjusting the seat, ensure sufficient space around the seat and in the rear seating area for children, passengers, or pets. Avoid squeezing or trapping

WARNING

children, occupants, or pets in the rear seat area.

- Maintain a safe distance from surrounding occupants' foot areas when adjusting the seat to avoid compression or entrapment.
- When adjusting the seat, do not place your hand under the seat or near its operating parts to prevent being crushed.
- After adjusting the seatback, lean back to confirm the seatback is locked. Seatbacks that are not fully locked can cause personal injuries in an accident or emergency braking.
- Do not put the seatback down while driving or riding in the vehicle. This makes the shoulder strap of the seat belt not properly attached to the body. As a result, occupants in the vehicle could hit the strap in an accident, causing injuries to the neck or other parts; or they may slip out of the waist belt, resulting in other serious injuries.
- Do not adjust the driver's seat while the vehicle is in motion, as unpredictable seat movement can cause the loss of vehicle control.
- Do not drive the vehicle until occupants are seated properly.
- Do not allow children to adjust the seat without adult supervision to avoid any injury.

CAUTION

- Adjust the seat position before fastening the seat belt.

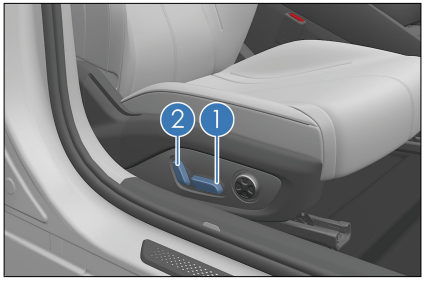
Adjusting Front Seats

Adjusting Front Seats with Power

Power front seat adjustment include seat position and cushion height* adjustment, seat base* and seatback angle adjustment. Choose the following methods according to the functions available in your vehicle.

① Seat position adjustment switch

- Move the seat position adjustment switch back or forth to move the seat backward or forward.
- Move the front end of the switch up or down to change the seat base angle.
- Move the rear end of the switch up or down to raise or lower the seat.



② Seatback angle adjustment switch

- Toggle the seatback angle adjustment switch to adjust the angle.

REMINDER

- Releasing the switch stops the seat in this position. Do not place anything under the seat as this may prevent the seat from operating.
- Do not move the front seats too far forward to avoid contact with the roof or sun visor.

Adjusting the lumbar support*

The seatback profile can be adjusted to fit the curvature of the occupant's lumbar spine.

- Press the front or rear portion of the switch to increase or decrease the curvature.
- Press the upper or lower portion of the switch to extend the curvature up or down.



Memory System*

Memory switch position

- You can set two seat positions to be memorised on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping ⚙ → **Seats** → **Seat Adjustment**.

Memory setting

- Memory setting conditions
  - The ignition has been switched on and the vehicle speed is zero.
  - The driver's seat and side mirrors have been adjusted to the desired positions.
  - No operation is made on the driver's seat and side mirrors.
- Memory setting method
  - Press and hold any position button on the seat memory setting interface. Then the positions of the seats and side mirrors will be recorded, and the memory setting finishes.

REMINDER

- If the position button on the memory switch has already been set, the position set will be overwritten.

Memory recall function

Memory recall function with the ignition on

- When the vehicle is in Park, the driver's seat memory system and side mirrors will perform memory recall when the memory system switch is tapped if the following conditions are met:
  - The anti-theft alarm system has disarmed.
  - The vehicle speed is zero.
  - Memory switch signals are valid.
  - No operation is made on the driver's seat and side mirrors.
- You can interrupt the current memory recall operation by the following methods:
  - Press or toggle any of the driver's seat adjustment switches.
  - Tap any position button on the seat memory setting interface of the infotainment system.

WARNING

- Ensure there are no obstacles around the seat before activating the seat memory recall function.
- Ensure that no part of your body is within the seat's movement range during the seat memory recall process.

WARNING

- Do not allow children to operate the memory switches to prevent any injury during seat movement.

Automatic seat

- Automatic back
  - This feature enables the seat (if located in the front section of its full travel) to automatically move back for a certain distance after the driver unlocks the vehicle with the smart key and opens the driver's door. This makes it easy for the driver to enter.
  - For easy exiting, this feature also works when the vehicle power is switched from "START" to "STOP" and the driver's door is opened.
- Automatic forward
  - When the vehicle power is switched from "STOP" to "START" and the driver's door is closed, the seat will automatically move forward to the position before the last power-off if no horizontal position adjustment is performed after the auto-back feature is triggered upon the last power-off.
  - If no horizontal position adjustment is performed after the auto-back feature is triggered for easy exiting, the seat will automatically move forward after the driver's door is closed.
- User settings
  - To enable or disable the automatic driver seat, go to infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Vehicle** → **Comfort Driving**.
  - The automatic driver seat function can be interrupted by closing the driver's door while the seat is moving backward or by opening the driver's

door while the seat is moving forward.

Heating and Ventilation Systems*

- Enable or disable the heating and ventilation system in infotainment touchscreen → → **Seats** → heating and ventilation system controls.
- You can also access the settings in the drop-down menu on infotainment system homepage.

Heating adjustment

- Seat heating: users can select between high and low seat heating modes from the seat heating control button.
  - The heating indicator is off by default after each power-on.
  - Press the switch to select the operation mode of the seat heater in level 1 or level 2.
  - Press the OFF gear to deactivate the heating function.

Ventilation adjustment

- Seat ventilation: users can select between high and low seat ventilation modes from the seat ventilation control button.
  - After each power-on, the driver's seat remains the last mode, and the initial heating state of the passenger's seat is Off.
  - Press the switch to select the operation mode of the seat ventilation in the 1st gear or 2nd gear.
  - Tap OFF to deactivate the ventilation function.

Ventilation and heating functions cannot be turned on at the same time

- Press the ventilation switch to make the ventilator work; if the heating switch is then pressed, the ventilator will stop and the heater will start to work.
- Tap the heating icon to make the heater work; if the ventilation function is then enabled, the heater will stop working and the fan will start to work.

Folding Rear Seats

Pull the strap on the rear seat to fold the bench.



CAUTION

- Fold or unfold the rear seats at a moderate speed. Avoid quickly lowering or pulling up seatbacks to prevent damage to or malfunction of rear seats and the seat belts.
- Ensure that the seat belts are not stuck between the seats when folding, or the seats and belts may be damged.

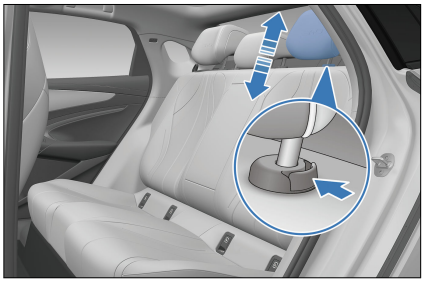
Rear Seat Head Supports

Lifting the head support

Lift the head support to a proper position, and release it after hearing a locking sound.

Lowering a head support

Press and hold the head support adjustment button, lower the head support to a proper position, slightly lift the head support and release the button after hearing a locking sound.



Removing a head support

Press and hold the head support adjustment button, remove the head support and release the button.

Installing a head support

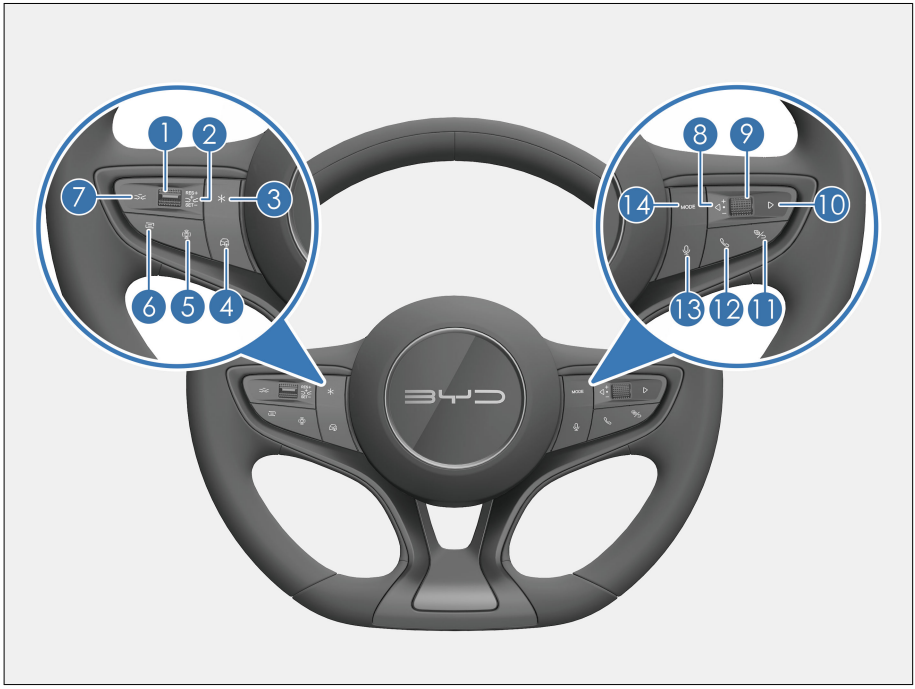
Insert the head support post into the bushing with the grooves facing forward. Press and hold the head support adjustment button, lower the head support to a proper position, slightly lift the head support and release the button after hearing a locking sound.

REMINDER

- Head supports protect vehicle occupants from head and neck injuries. Adjust the head support so that its centre aligns with the back of your head for maximum protection. Adjust the head support to the proper position based on your actual height.
- To avoid any injury to heads and shoulders of the occupants, align the occupant's ear tip line with the centre of the head support when adjusting the head support height.
- After the adjustment, press down the head support to make sure that it is locked.
- Do not drive the vehicle without head supports.
- Do not attach any objects to the head support levers.

Steering Wheel

Steering Wheel Switches



1	RES +/SET - lever	8	Left
2	Distance +	9	Scroll button
3	Custom mode	10	Right
4	ADAS	11	Instrument cluster/Back
5	AVM	12	Call
6	Driving information	13	Speech recognition
7	Distance -	14	Mode

Left-hand buttons

Rocker switch

- RES+: Activates the adaptive cruise control (ACC) system and uses the previous system settings.
- SET-: Sets the current speed to the target cruise speed.

Distance -

- Reduces the distance from the vehicle ahead by one level when the ACC function is enabled. A total of four levels are available.

Distance +

- Increases the distance by one notch when the ACC function is enabled. A total of four notches are available.

CAUTION

- For instructions on using cruise control, see ***P127***.

Custom mode

- Long press to enter the custom button setting interface, and you can select custom function buttons. Short press to perform custom functions.

AVM

- Turns panoramic view off if already in panoramic view mode, or on if not in panoramic view mode.

ADAS

- Turns ADAS on or off.

Driving information

- Press this button to switch the driving information interface. Press and hold to clear the relevant driving information.

Right-hand buttons

Scroll button

- Adjusting infotainment system volume when the instrument cluster is not in menu mode:
  - Roll the button upward to increase the volume. The button is non-operational when the volume reaches the highest.
  - Roll the button downward to decrease the volume. The button is non-operational when the volume reaches the lowest.
  - Press down the button to mute.
- When the instrument cluster is in menu mode:
  - Roll the button upward to select the upper level-2 or level-3 menu items.
  - Roll the button downward to select the lower level-2 or level-3 menu items.
  - Press down the button to go to the next-level menu or confirm the current setting.

CAUTION

- The infotainment system is muted once the instrument cluster is set to the menu mode. To adjust infotainment system volume, exit the instrument cluster menu mode first.

Left/Right button

- When the infotainment system is in radio mode:
  - Press ◁ to select previous radio station.
  - Press ▷ to select next radio station.
- When the infotainment system is in USB/Bluetooth music/third-party music app/other modes:
  - Press ◁ to play the previous track (track number -1).
  - Press ◁ to select a record upward on the Bluetooth call record or phonebook screen.
  - Press ▷ to play the next track (track number +1).

- Press ▷ to select a record downward on the Bluetooth call record or phonebook screen.

- When the instrument cluster is in menu mode:
  - Press the ◁ button to switch to level-1 menu and its submenus on the left.
  - Press the ▷ button to switch to level+1 menu and its submenus on the right.

Call

- Press this button to make or receive a call. (The audio system is muted at the same time.)
- When a Bluetooth-unrelated screen is currently displayed, press this button to switch to the phone selection screen if Bluetooth is disconnected, or to the dial screen if Bluetooth is connected.
- After entering a phone number on the dial screen or selecting a record on the call log or contacts screen, press this button to dial the number.
- When Bluetooth is connected, but no phone number is entered on the Dial screen, press this button to switch to the call log screen. Press this button again to call the first dialed number on the call history.

Speech recognition

- Press this button for the infotainment touchscreen to switch to the voice recognition screen, and you can say the desired voice command.
- Press a second time to exit the screen.

Instrument cluster/Back

- When the instrument cluster is not in the menu mode, press Instrument cluster/Back to show the instrument cluster menu.
- When the instrument cluster is in menu mode, press this button to return to the upper-level screen, or to exit the menu if there is no upper-level screen.
- When on the Bluetooth call screen, press this button to end the call.

Mode

- Selecting a mode: Press the Mode button to switch between media apps, peripherals, and pre-installed third-party audio/video apps.

Horn

- Press the horn button area to honk the horn, and release to stop honking.

CAUTION

- Avoid pressing honking for too long, as the horn may be damaged.

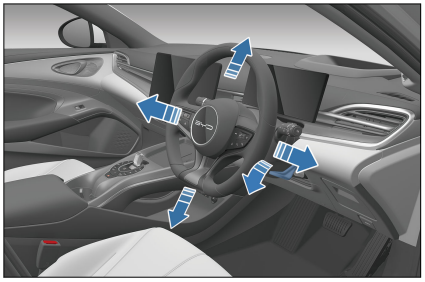
REMINDER

- Observe the traffic laws and use the horn properly.

Adjusting the Steering Wheel

Adjusting the Steering Wheel Manually

- To adjust the steering wheel position, hold it and operate as follows:
  - Push down the steering wheel adjustment handle, adjust the steering wheel to the desired position, and then return the handle to its original position.



REMINDER

- Never adjust the steering wheel while driving, as this is under risk of impaired vehicle control, which can lead to accidents.
- After adjusting the steering wheel, move it up and down to verify that it is securely locked.

Power-Assisted Steering Mode Settings

- The steering feel varies from person to person, and so do the evaluation and needs for this feel.
- You can select Comfortable or Sport from the **Brake Assist Mode** in the infotainment touchscreen→ ⚙ → **Vehicle** → **Driving Control**.

REMINDER

- Setting the steering mode to sport mode is suggested if the steering wheel feels light when the vehicle is running at a high speed.

Steering Wheel Heating

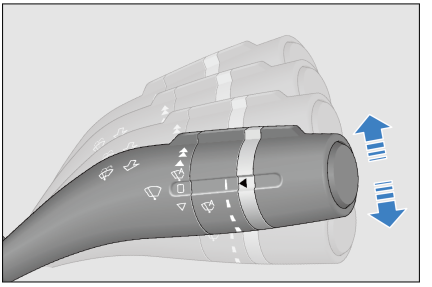
Enable steering wheel heating by any of the following methods:

1. Go to seats → steering wheel heating interface to turn on or off the heating.
2. Go to the drop-down shortcut menu, and tap the steering wheel heating icon. Then the setting screen is displayed.
3. Voice control: activate the voice control to enable or disable steering wheel heating.

Wipers

Wiper Switch

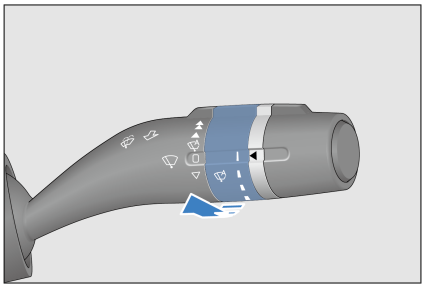
- Push up or pull down the lever to select among the five modes:
  - : Fast
  - : Slow
  - : Auto/Intermittent wipers
  - : OFF
  - : Point-wiping (pulling down the lever from and the wipers wipe at a low speed until you release the lever).



Auto/Intermittent wipers

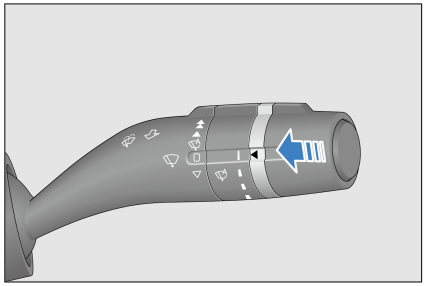
- The rain sensor automatically controls the operation mode of wipers based on the rainfall, and it is located in front of the interior rearview mirror on the front windscreen inside the vehicle.

- To use the automatic wiper function, turn the wiper switch to the automatic mode, go to infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Vehicle** → **Comfort Driving** → **Auto Wiper** on.
- To use the intermittent wiper function, turn the wiper switch to the automatic mode, go to infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Vehicle** → **Comfort Driving** → **Auto Wiper** off.
- Turn the knob to change the rain sensor sensitivity based on real-time rain conditions. A total of four levels are available.
  - Upward: reduces the rain sensor sensitivity.
  - Downward: increases the rain sensor sensitivity.



Front windscreen wipers and washer

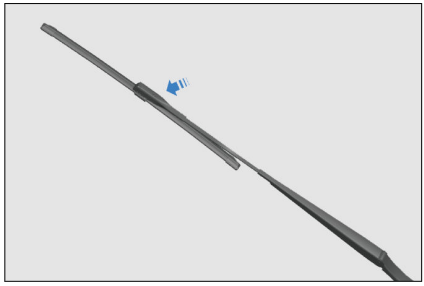
- To clean the front windscreen, pull the wiper switch lever backward (towards the steering wheel) so that the washer spray washing fluid while the wipers operate.
- The washer spray will stop when the stick is released, and the wipers will operate twice then stop.



Replacing Wiper Blades

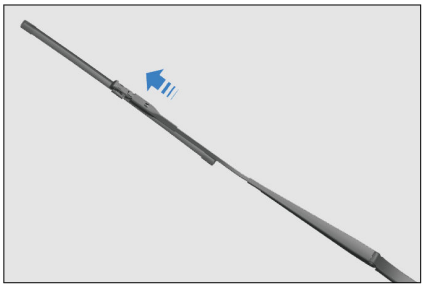
- Inspect wiper blades for cracks or partial hardening at least every six months. If they are noted, replace wiper blades. Otherwise, the windscreen will streak or will be left unclean after wiping.
- When the vehicle is powered on, turn on the wiper service function by going to infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Service** → **Overhaul**. When the corresponding wiper service function is enabled, the wipers rotate out automatically for easy maintenance and replacement.

1. Pull up the wiper arm at the driver side, and then pull up the other at the passenger side.
2. Press the wiper lock button.



3. Hold the wiper blade and pull it out along the indicated direction.

4. When installing a new wiper blade, follow the reverse procedure.



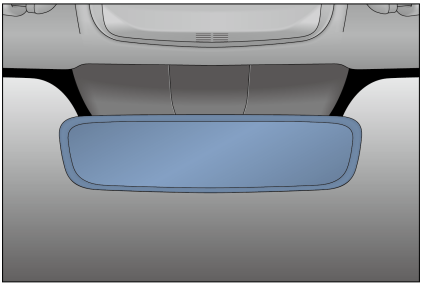
WARNING

- Do not open the bonnet when wiper arms are lifted, otherwise it may damage the bonnet and wiper arms.
- Lower the wiper blades slowly and avoid direct impact onto the windscreen.
- Do not bend the wiper blade, and do not obstruct the wiper blade when the wiper is in operation.

Rearview Mirrors

Interior Rearview Mirror

- The automatic anti-glare interior rearview mirror is equipped with electronic anti-glare function, which automatically adjusts the lens colour of the mirror according to the surroundings to reduce the interference of rear glare on the driver's field of vision.
- Move the interior rearview mirror up or down, left or right to a suitable position.



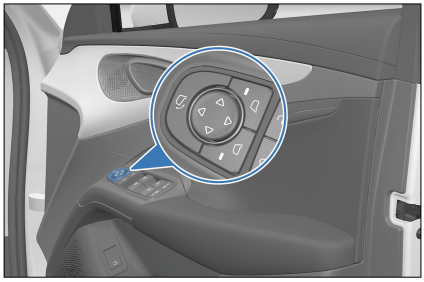
WARNING

- Adjusting the interior rearview mirror before driving. Do not adjust the rearview mirror while driving. This may distract your attention and cause accidents.
- Do not hang heavy objects from the interior rearview mirror, or shake or drag it with force.
- When manually adjusting the interior rearview mirror, do not forcibly adjust the stuck mirror to avoid the mirror falling off.

Power Side Mirrors

Use the associated switches to adjust the side mirrors to see the sides of the vehicle.

- Side mirror selection buttons: selects the side mirror to be adjusted.
  - : Selects the left side mirror
  - : Selects the right side mirror
- Side mirror adjustment buttons : adjusts the side mirrors to a proper position.



WARNING

- Adjust the side mirrors before driving. Do not adjust the side mirrors while driving. This may distract your attention and cause accidents.

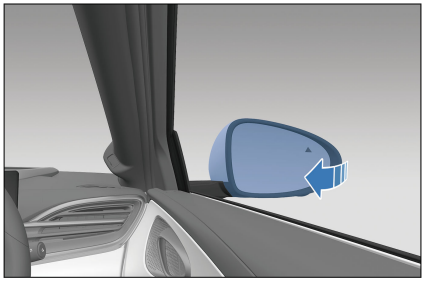
REMINDER

- The power side mirrors have reverse tilt function*. The mirrors can automatically tilt down to a comfortable angle in reverse.
- Do not operate the controller or scrape the surfaces of frozen side mirrors. Use de-icer spray to remove the ice.

Folding Side Mirrors

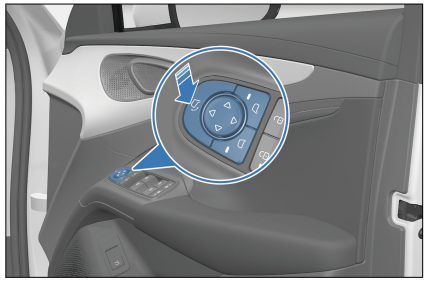
Folding side mirrors manually

Push the outer edge of a side mirror to rotate it around the folding axis to the locked position.



Folding side mirrors with power

- Press the button to fold the side mirrors with power. Press the button again to unfold the mirrors.
- Both side mirrors fold automatically when the anti-theft alarm system is armed, and extend automatically when disarmed.

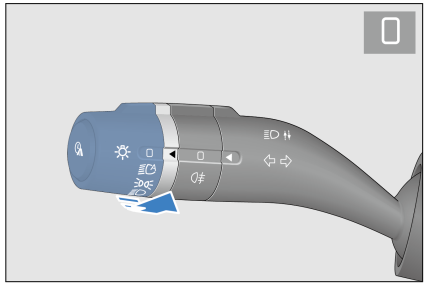


- To enable or disable side mirror auto fold, go to the infotainment touchscreen → → **Vehicle** → **Comfort Driving**.

Switches

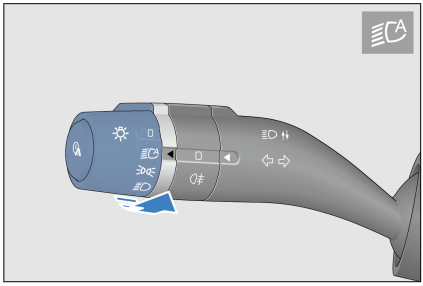
Light Switches

Set the light switch to to turn off all lights except for daytime running lights.



Auto lights

Set the light switch to . The body control module captures the brightness data from the light intensity sensor to automatically turn the position lights and low beam on or off.

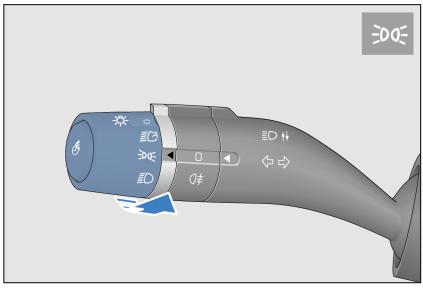


REMINDER

- The light intensity sensor is located on the top of the windscreen. Do not block the sensor or let anything splash on it.

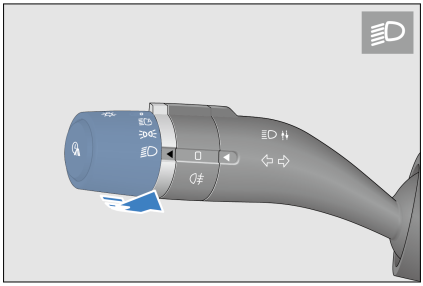
Position lights

Set the light switch to to turn on front position lights, rear position lights and license plate light.



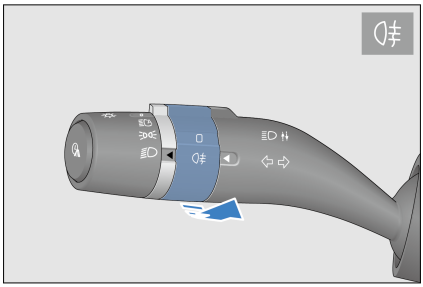
Low beam

Set the light switch to to turn on the low beam.



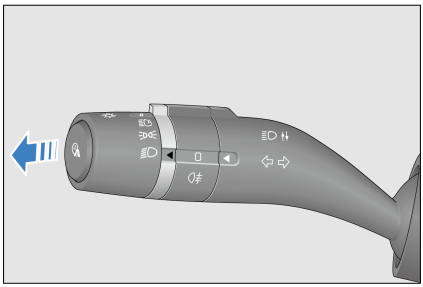
Rear fog lights

Set the light switch to and rotate the fog light dial to , to turn on rear fog lights.



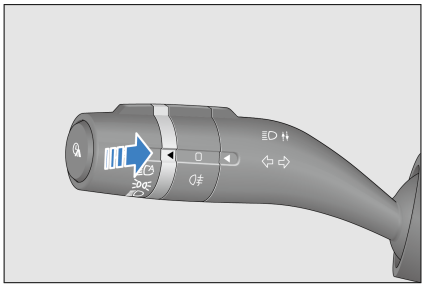
High beam

Set the light switch to and push the light switch lever down (away from the steering wheel) to turn on the high beam. Push the light switch handle down again to turn the high beam off.



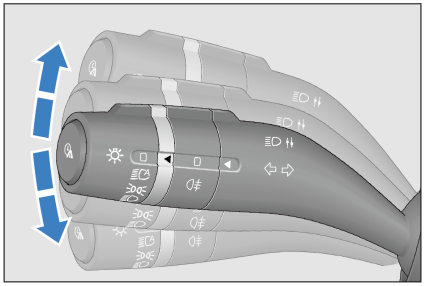
Overtaking light

Pull up the lever (toward the steering wheel) to turn on the overtaking light. Release the lever for the light switch to automatically reset. The overtaking light turns off.



Turn signals

- Push up the lever to signal right turn. The right turn signal and its indicator on the instrument cluster flash.
- Pull down the lever to signal left turn. The left turn signal and its indicator on the instrument cluster flash.



CAUTION

- Once turned on, turn signals continue flashing even after the handle is released. They will turn off after the turn is complete. Depending on the driver's habit, the turn signal will reset after the vehicle turns around under some extreme conditions.

Auto light off

- Conditions to activate the auto light off function: To activate this function, set the light switch to or and switch off the vehicle power.
- When the auto light off function is activated, the headlights, position lights, rear fog lights, and high beams turn off in 10 seconds if the driver door is closed.
- When the function is activated, the headlights, position lights, rear fog lights and high beams turn off in 10 minutes if the driver's door is open.
- After the lights turn off automatically, if the light status changes, these lights come on in the new status. If the conditions to activate the auto light off function are still met, the function is activated again.
- Disabling the auto light off function: When the vehicle is powered on, the auto light off function is disabled, and the light switch can be operated normally.
- If the auto light off function has turned off the lights and the anti-theft alarm system has been armed, when you deactivate the alarm, the lights come on again automatically. If the driver's door remains closed, the lights go off again after 10 seconds. But if the door is open, it will turn off the light in 10 minutes.

Lighting delay*

- Headlights after exit:
  - When the combination switch is turned to , or and you are about to power off the vehicle and leave the vehicle, the corresponding lights will light up for 10 seconds (or a set time).
  - Set the time for "Headlights before Enter" on the infotainment

touchscreen → ⚙ → **Light** → **Courtesy Light** (default: 10 seconds).

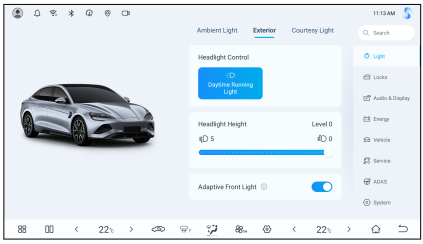
- Headlights before enter:
  - When the combination switch is turned to , or and you are about to unlock and approach the vehicle, the corresponding lights will light up for 10s (or a set time).
  - Set the time for "Headlights before Enter" on the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Light** → **Courtesy Light** (default: 10 seconds).

Headlight Height

- To adjust headlight height, go to the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Light** → **Exterior**.
- Vehicle loading conditions may differ. Adjust accordingly.

Adjusting Headlight Height

- When the low beam is on, tap ⚙ → **Light** → **Exterior Light** → **Headlight Height** on the infotainment touchscreen to adjust the vertical beam angle of the headlights.
- Vehicle loading conditions may differ. Adjust accordingly.



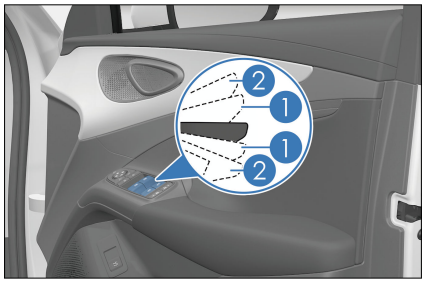
Driver's Door Switches

Power Window Switches

- When the ignition is on, all the window switches can roll up or down the window. After the vehicle is powered off, no power windows can be regulated.

Driver Side Windows Control Switch

There are two gears of window control, like the figure ① and ②.



Manual operation

- Press the window regulator switch to ① mode position and keep it (for vehicles without anti-pinch function, directly press and hold the window regulator switch) to lower the window; releasing the switch can immediately stop the window lowering; pull up the window regulator switch to ① mode position and keep it (for vehicles without anti-pinch function, directly pull up and hold the window regulator switch) to raise the window; releasing the switch can immediately stop the window raising.

Auto Lifting

- Press or pull the window control switch to position ② and release to automatically lower or raise the associated window all the way.

Anti-pinch function

- If someone or an object is caught by the window when it is rolling up, the window stops and rolls down automatically.

Automatic window rolling-up and anti-pinch failure

- If the window working indicator flashes, it indicates that the automatic window closing and anti-pinch functions fail. In this case, follow the steps given below to restore the functions:
  - Pull up the window switch to raise the window glass to the top position and hold it there for about two seconds, and then press to lower the window glass to the bottom and hold it there for about two seconds. The automatic up and anti-pinch functions can be recovered.

Delay function

- After the vehicle is powered off, if the front doors are not open, the four-door window controller has a roll-up/down delay period of 10 minutes. During this period, the windows can still be rolled up and down. If either of the front doors is opened during this period, the delay function is cancelled, and the switches can no longer be used to operate the windows.

WARNING

- Never deliberately activate the anti-pinch function with any part of your body.
- Follow the precautions below to prevent serious injuries or death from window closing:
  - Before operating the power windows, ensure that all passengers do not have any body parts that can be caught in the window.

WARNING

- Do not allow a child to operate the power windows.

CAUTION

- The anti-pinch function may not work if an object is jammed into the window when it is almost completely closed.
- Contacting a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for maintenance is recommended if the windows' automatic closing function or anti-pinch function is not working normally.
- Windows with anti-pinch function can control opening or closing* the window by ***P184***.

Central Locking

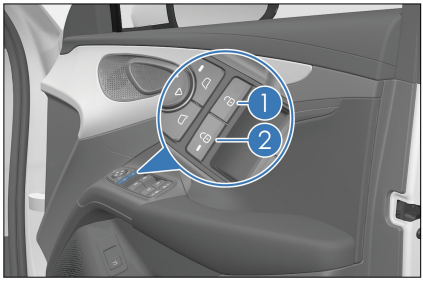
The driver's door is equipped with power door lock switches to lock or unlock all doors.

① Unlocking

Press the central unlock button. All doors are unlocked and the red lock indicator turns off.

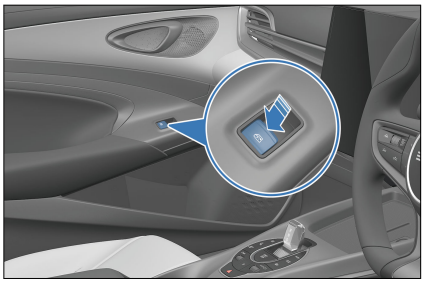
② Locking

Press the central lock button. All doors are locked and the red lock indicator lights up.



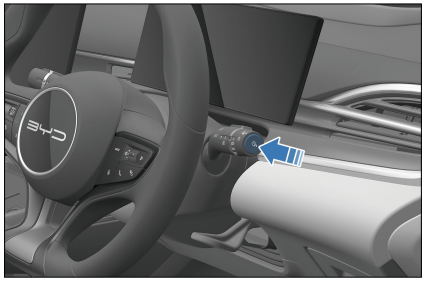
Window Control Switch on Passenger Side

When the ignition is on, use the front left and rear door window switches to operate the respective windows.



Odometer Switch

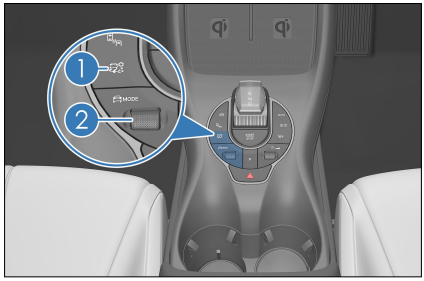
- Press the odometer switch to switch between "Total Mileage" - "Mileage 1" - "Mileage 2" - "Total Mileage". The switching status is displayed accordingly on the instrument cluster.
- Press and hold "Mileage 1" and "Mileage 2" to clear the mileage information.



Mode Switches

① Snow mode button

- Snow mode is designed for slippery surfaces such as grass, snow, ice, or gravel. It optimises the vehicle's traction, driving, and handling performance.
- To ensure safety, control your speed and gently press the accelerator pedal on slippery roads, even when snow mode is activated.



CAUTION

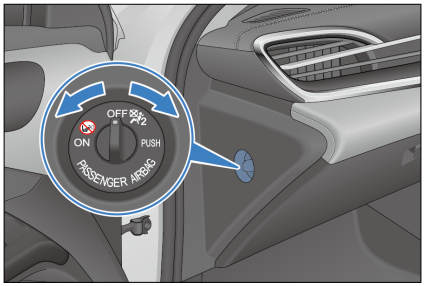
- ESC system may limit the vehicle's torque. Therefore, temporarily shutting down the system may help if the vehicle skids and gets stuck in soft snow. The ESC system must be restarted after conditions are back to normal (see ***P174***).

- Roll the scroll button② to switch ECO, NORMAL and SPORT modes cyclically.

Front Passenger Airbag Switch (PAB)

Front passenger airbag switch (PAB switch)

- The front passenger airbag can be activated/deactivated if the car is equipped with a passenger airbag switch.
- Before driving, repeatedly check the PAB switch status based on the seating situation of the front passenger seat to confirm that the PAB is in the correct state.



- Enable or disable the front passenger airbag according to the use of the front passenger seat:
  - When the PAB switch is ON, the front passenger airbag is activated. The front passenger airbag indicator "PASSENGER AIRBAG" is solid on, "ON" and come on, and the PAD status bar displays PASSENGER AIRBAG ON. The front passenger airbag will deploy in the event of a moderate to severe collision that meets the necessary deployment conditions.
  - When the PAB switch is OFF, the front passenger airbag is activated. The front passenger airbag indicator "PASSENGER AIRBAG" is solid on, "OFF" and come on, and the PAD status bar displays PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF. The front passenger airbag will not deploy in the event of a moderate to severe collision that meets the necessary deployment conditions.

WARNING

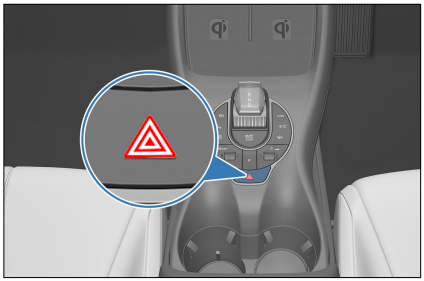
- When the front passenger seat is occupied with an adult, the passenger airbag switch must be turned to "ON" to always keep the front passenger airbag active.
- When the front passenger seat is occupied with an infant or child in a rearward-facing child restraint, the driver shall check that PAB switch is off and PAB is disabled.
- If the front passenger airbag remains active when the passenger airbag switch is off, immediately contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
- If the recommendations above are not accepted, there is a high risk of serious passenger injury or even casualty.

CAUTION

- The passenger airbag can be turned off by the switch if the vehicle is equipped with a passenger airbag cut-off switch.
- A rear seat is the preferred choice for installing a child restraint.

Hazard Warning Light Switch

When the ⚠ button is pressed, all turn signals and turn signal indicators on the instrument cluster start flashing. They all stop flashing when the ⚠ button is pressed again.



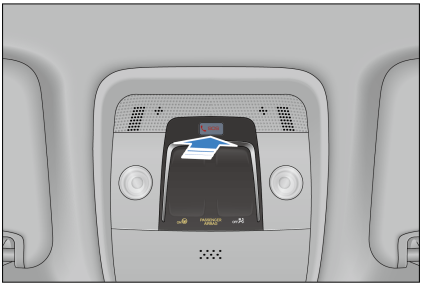
⚠ CAUTION

- The hazard warning lights are used to alert drivers and pedestrians of possible risks.

Emergency Call (E-Call)*

E-Call status indicator

E-call is short for "emergency call". When this vehicle suffers a serious collision or gets in an emergency, pressing this button connects to the call centre with the highest priority. The customer service staff will obtain important user and vehicle data, and will assist the user in escaping danger, dispatching an ambulance to the scene immediately if necessary to ensure the user's safety.



- Pressing and holding the SOS button for 1 second ⩽t⩽10 seconds triggers the E-Call system manually, and pressing and holding the button for 10-20 seconds does not.
- To cancel an emergency call made by mistake, press the SOS button a second time within five seconds.
- The E-Call system activates automatically in the event of airbag deployment or the detection of a severe collision.
- When triggered, the system automatically makes an emergency call and communicates standard information to a public safety answering point.

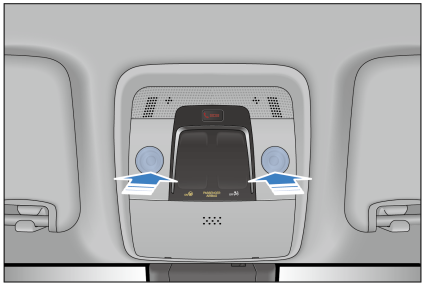
⚠ CAUTION

- The SOS button will be considered to be short-circuited (button stuck) if you press and hold the SOS button for over 20 seconds. In that case, the E-Call cannot be triggered manually.
- The dialed emergency call cannot be cancelled manually. The E-Call system will begin 60-minute callback time after the call is hung up by the public safety answering point or is not answered when it has been dialed 10 consecutive times.

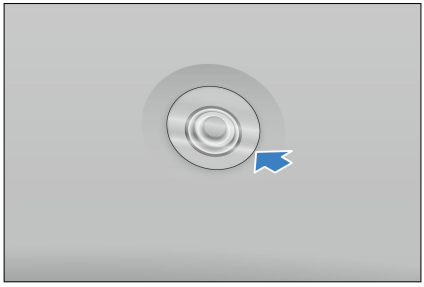
Status	LED indicator	Beeping
Ignition off or E-Call system failure	Off	\
Power-on self-check mode	Flashing fast - 2 Hz	\
Ignition on and self-check passed	Solid on if self-check is passed	\
E-Call connecting	Flashing - 1 Hz	A beep
E-Call connected	Flashing - 1 Hz	A beep
E-Call ended	Solid on	Two beeps after E-Call ends
Callback time (60 minutes by default)	Flashing extremely slowly - 0.2 Hz	\

Interior Light Switch

Front Interior Lights Switches



Side Interior Light Switch



REMINDER

- In any ignition status, while DOOR option is selected and any door is open, touching on the interior light switches it between high and low brightness.
- With the ignition off and DOOR option enabled, interior lights will go off after the door have remained open for a period of time. To turn on or off the DOOR option, slide down the top status bar on the infotainment touchscreen to display the shortcut page.

Ambient Lights*

To control the brightness, colour and area of the ambient light, go to the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Light** → **Ambient Light**.

04 USING AND DRIVING

Charging/Discharging Instructions 84
Batteries 100
Usage Precautions 104
Starting and Driving 111
Driving Assistance 121

Charging/ Discharging Instructions

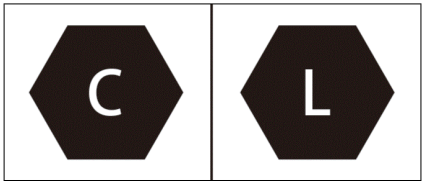
Charging Instructions

Charging Safety Warnings

- Charging equipment uses high-voltage current. Minors are prohibited to charge the vehicle or touch the charging equipment. Keep them away from the vehicle during charging.
- Charging may affect medical or implanted electronic devices. Consult the device manufacturer before charging.
- Charge the vehicle in a safe environment, and avoid charging in damp areas, or areas with fire or heat sources.
  - Protect the charging equipment against water contact on rainy days.
- Use charging equipment that complies with local standards.
  - To avoid charging failure or fire, do not modify, disassemble, or repair the charging equipment and related ports. Contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider if there is a fault.
  - Ensure the quality of charging equipment.
- Before charging:
  - Ensure that the power supply equipment, the charging connector, the charge port, and the charging connection device are free of defects, such as cable wear, rusted ports, cracked casings, or foreign objects in the ports.
  - Do not charge the vehicle when the plug of the charging connector or port, the socket, or metal terminals are loose or damaged by rust or corrosion.
  - When the charging connector, the port, the power plug, or the socket is visibly stained or damp, wipe them with a dry and clean cloth to ensure the connection is dry and clean.
- Ensure that your hands are dry before charging to prevent risk of personal injuries.
- If anything abnormal is found in the vehicle or the charging equipment during charging, stop charging immediately and contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
- Always observe the following charging precautions to prevent damage to the vehicle:
  - Do not shake the charging connector, otherwise the vehicle charge port may be damaged.
  - Whenever possible, do not charge the vehicle in a thunderstorm, under risk of lightning strikes.
- Do not open the bonnet for maintenance while charging.
- After charging, do not disconnect the charging equipment with wet hands or while standing on any wet surface.
  - Before driving, ensure that the charging equipment is disconnected from the charge port.

Compatibility of vehicle and charging infrastructure*

- The signs are located on the vehicle's charging socket, components of the local charging infrastructure (charging stations and sockets) and on the charging cable.



The signs refer to standardised charging systems in accordance with DIN EN 62196.

Charging Precautions

- When the State of Charge (SOC) bar on the instrument cluster turns red, the power battery is about to be exhausted. Please charge it immediately, otherwise the service life of the power battery will be reduced.
- Mode 2 charging means charging with an AC charging connector that complies with local standards. It is recommended to use the dedicated AC lines and power sockets meeting local standards to avoid line damage and protective trip due to high-power charging, affecting the normal use of other equipment.
- Avoiding damage to the charging equipment (precautions for charging equipment):
  - Prevent the charging equipment from suffering any mechanical impact.
  - Do not place the charging equipment near heaters or other heating sources.
  - Never drop the equipment or move it by pulling it directly by the cable. Take caution when moving the equipment.
- Before charging:
  - Make sure that the charging connector and charge port are free of foreign objects, and that the protective cap of the charging connector terminal does not get loose or deformed.
  - Hold the charging connector, align the connector with the charge port and push it in, making sure that they are properly connected.
- When charging is complete:
  - Stop charging first and make sure the charge port is unlocked.
  - Pull the charging connector.
  - Do not force the charging connector out while the charge port is locked, otherwise the charge port may be damaged.
- Switch the ignition off before charging.
- Precautions:
  - Starting the vehicle to use A/C. To ensure the charging power, it is recommended not to turn on A/C.
- The vehicle should be parked in a ventilated area, and there should not be any occupant inside when charging.
- The vehicle system stops charging automatically when the high-voltage battery is fully charged.
- To stop charging before it is full, turn off the charging machine before disconnecting the charging connector. In mode 2 charging, remove the charging connector and then the power plug.
- When charging is complete and the charging connector is unplugged, make sure that the charge port cap and door are closed, otherwise water or foreign materials may enter the port and affect its normal use.
- During DC charging, the DC charging power is relatively small during the period to identify the real capability of the charging pile and allow the charging pile to exert its maximum

output capacity, thereby bringing a better charging experience to users. (Only motor booster DC Charge)

- Before starting the vehicle, ensure that the charging equipment is disconnected. The locking mechanism can damage the charging equipment and the vehicle if the vehicle is started with the charging connector incorrectly inserted.
- When the temperature is low, it is recommended to charge the vehicle in heated indoor space.
- When the temperature is high, charging in a cool, ventilated place is recommended.
- Too high or too low battery temperatures compromise vehicle charging performance.
  - The temperature control system can improve the battery's charging capacity at low temperatures. Due to output capacity limitations of charging piles, the charging time is extended, the heating time becomes longer and the power consumption of heating is increased. This is a normal phenomenon.
  - For faster low-temperature DC charging, charging from low SOC is recommended because due to the low battery temperature, the charging current is small for vehicles with high SOC in low-temperature environments.
  - To improve your experience at low temperatures, it is recommended that you charge the vehicle immediately after using it, as the battery is relatively hot and has better charging performance.
- Turning A/C on during low-temperature charging affects the performance of battery temperature control system and charging performance.
- It is normal that when the battery temperature control system is working during charging, the charging power displayed on the instrument cluster may fluctuate temporarily.
- Before charging is complete, battery equalisation is activated for longer battery life and thus the charging time may be longer.
- The use of A/C may worsen battery temperature control system performance in DC charging at high temperatures, resulting in lower charging performance and longer charging time. To ensure charging efficiency, it is recommended to keep the A/C off during charging.
- When the heating or cooling function is enabled during charging, it is normal that both charging time and power consumption increase slightly.
- During charging and a period after charging, battery cooling may start, and the compressor, fan and other components work when necessary. It is normal that there will be some noise under the bonnet.
- During charging, the estimated remaining time to full charge is displayed on the instrument cluster or infotainment touchscreen. It is normal that the remaining time to full charge may vary slightly, depending on the temperatures, SOC, and charging facilities. Before charging is completed, "Calculating..." is displayed on the instrument cluster.
- If the charge port door is frozen due to weather or other reasons, do not force it open.
- If the vehicle is to be parked for a lengthy period of time, charge it every three months, and to prolong the

service life of the high-voltage battery, charge fully before starting it again.

REMINDER

- Do not force the charge port door open when it is locked.
- Do not forcibly insert or pull out the connector with the electric lock engaged.
- Do not close the charge port door when the port cap is fully open.
- When the vehicle is charged with an external power supply, it is normal that the cooling fan and A/C compressor may operate automatically for the high-voltage battery to cool down.

Charging Method

The pure electric vehicle is driven by electric energy supplied from the high-voltage battery. To prevent insufficient power of the high-voltage battery affecting the vehicle driving experience, it is very important to charge the vehicle in time and estimate the power demand before driving.

Vehicle Charging Method:

1. Using Mode 2 Charging Cable*
2. Charging with AC Charging Piles*
3. Using DC Chargers*

- The charging time of power battery varies with the charging mode, current SOC, real-time temperature, service time, ambient temperature and other conditions.
- Use charging equipment that complies with local standards.

Charging Mode

- Charging Reservation (Only AC): Charge the vehicle regularly at a scheduled charging time set by the user.

REMINDER

- The vehicle's power will increase while waiting for the reservation charging. It is normal for long waiting to result in a reduction of the vehicle's power and driving range.

- Immediate charging: Charging starts after the charging connector is connected.

General Charging Troubleshooting

Fault	Possible Cause	Solution
The charger is connected but charging does not start.	The high-voltage battery has been fully charged.	When the high-voltage battery is fully charged, the charging will stop automatically.
	High-voltage battery temperature is too high or too low.	Keep the vehicle in an environment with appropriate temperature and charge it when the temperature becomes normal.
	The low-voltage battery over-discharges.	Replace the low-voltage battery.

Fault	Possible Cause	Solution
	Charging equipment fails.	If it is verified that the charging equipment's power indicator is working properly, or that there are no other unusual indications, change the charging equipment or contact the charging equipment supplier.
	Vehicle display fails.	Verify that there is a charging system fault message on the instrument cluster, then stop the charging. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
Charging stops midway	AC grid outage	During AC charging, if power supply resumes after short-time outage of the external power grid, BYD charging equipment will re-start charging automatically and no re-connection of the charging equipment is required.
	Charging cable is not connected properly	Verify that the charging connection cable is not loosely connected.
	High-voltage battery temperature is too high or too low.	Charging stops automatically if the high-voltage battery overheating warning light comes out on the instrument cluster. Charge the vehicle when the battery temperature returns to a normal level.
	Vehicle or charging pile failure	If there is any fault prompt for the charging pile or the vehicle, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.

Charging

- Check before charging:
  - Check the charging device for abnormalities such as cracked housing, worn cable, rusted plug, or foreign materials.
  - Do not charge when the charging connection becomes loose.
  - Make sure the port is clear of fluids or foreign objects, and its metal terminals are not rusty or corroded.
- Do not charge in any of these cases. Otherwise, personal injury may occur due to short circuit or electric shock.

Using Mode 2 Charging Cable*

1. Equipment descriptions

- Connect the vehicle to an outlet that meets local standards to charge the vehicle.
- A household socket meeting local standards must be used in order to avoid line damage or tripping due to high-power charging, which may effect the normal use of other devices.
- This EV Mode 2 charging cable includes a power plug (complying with local standards), a charging connector, a control box, and a charging cable. The plug should be connected to a standard household power socket, and

the charging connector to the vehicle's charge port.

- Charging time: refer to the charging time message on the instrument cluster.

WARNING

- See "Charging Instructions" for charging safety warnings.
- The highest working temperature allowed for the product is 122°F (50°C). Store the product in a cool and dry place when it is not in use.
- When charging, do not place the equipment in the trunk, under the front of the vehicle, or near the tyres.
- When using the equipment, prevent it from getting rolled over by the vehicle, dropped, or trampled on.
- It is not recommended to use any additional wire or adapter/ connector.
- Never use the charging equipment if the household power strip cable becomes soft, if the charging connector cable is worn out, if the insulation layer is cracked, or in case of any other damage.
- Never use the equipment if the charging connector, power plug, or power strip is disconnected or broken, or if there is any sign of surface damage.
- To prevent failure of the charge port door, do not open and close it repeatedly. The recommended time interval for opening and closing the port door is at least one second.

CAUTION

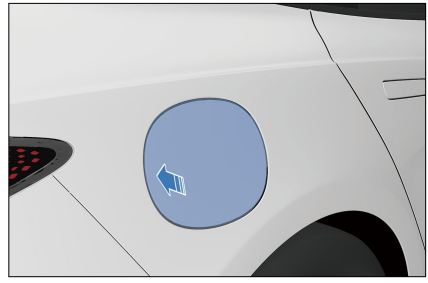
- The charging cable must not be placed in a spiral during charging, as this will affect heat dissipation.
- See “Charging Instructions" for specific charging precautions.

REMINDER

- It is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider or local electrician to select an appropriate power supply according to requirements of the charging equipment.
- Charging equipment grounding instructions: The equipment must be properly grounded. In the event of failure or damage to the equipment, the grounding cable provides a minimum impedance to circuit discharge and thereby reducing the risk of electric shock.
- The power plug must match a properly installed and well-grounded power supply outlet.

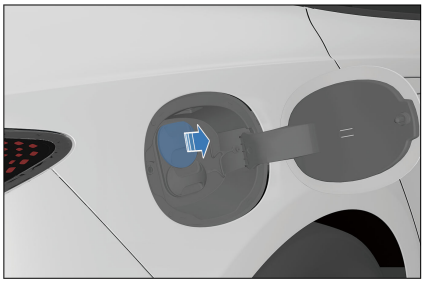
2. Charging

- With the vehicle doors unlocked and preferably powered off, press the charge port door to open it.



- Open the charge port cap, and make sure that no obstacles exist between

the head of the charging connector and the end of the charging socket.



REMINDER

- Do not force the charge port door open when it is locked.
- If the charge port door is frozen due to weather or other reasons, it is suggested to warm up it with hot water and then open the port door. Do not force it open.

- Connect to the power supply terminal:
  - Plug the EV Mode 2 charging cable into a household socket.
- Connect the vehicle port:
  - Plug the charging connector correctly into the port.
- After the charging connector is inserted, the charging connection indicator lights up on the instrument cluster.

REMINDER

- Do not forcibly insert the connector with the electric lock engaged.

- In the charging process, the instrument cluster displays relevant charging parameters and the charging sign.
- At this point, you can schedule charging on the Infotainment system. See ***P93*** for the setup process.

REMINDER

- During charging, the estimated remaining time to full charge is displayed on the instrument cluster or infotainment touchscreen. It is normal that the remaining time to full charge may vary slightly, depending on the temperatures, SOC, and charging facilities.
- Scheduled charging cannot be used when the battery is too low.

3. Stopping charging

- End charging:
  - The charging automatically ends when the vehicle is fully charged.
  - Press the unlock button on the smart key or press the door handle microswitch (when the key is nearby), the vehicle will stop charging.
- Unplug the charging connector:
  - If the anti-theft lock is deactivated, press the mechanical button of the charging connector or pull out the charging connector as needed.
  - If the anti-theft lock is active, press the unlock button on the key or press the door handle microswitch (when the key is nearby), then pull out the charging connector.

REMINDER

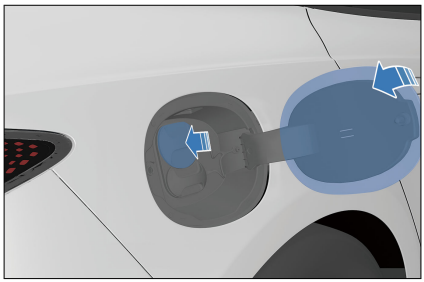
- To unlock the vehicle, press the unlock button on the key (when charging the vehicle with ignition switched off) or press the

REMINDER

microswitch on the door handle (when the key is nearby).

- When the anti-theft system is enabled, unlock the vehicle to release the charge port immobiliser before pulling out the charging connector. The connector has to be pulled out within 30 seconds, or the port will re-lock.
- You can activate the anti-theft lock on the infotainment touchscreen, see ***P97*** for details.
- If the charging connector cannot be removed after unlocking, try a few more unlocking attempts. If that does not work, try emergency unlocking. For the operating procedure, see ***P98***.
- If you cannot pull the charging connector out directly with the charge port's immobiliser system deactivated, try to unlock the vehicle and pull it again.

- Disconnect the power plug.
- Close the charge port cap and the port door.
- Store the charging equipment properly.



REMINDER

- Do not close the charge port door when the port cap is fully open.

WARNING

- Never drop the EV Mode 2 charging cable or pull it directly by its cable. Take caution when moving the equipment. Store the equipment in a cool place after use.

Using AC Charging Piles*

1. Equipment descriptions

- AC charging box
  - Use a standard-compliant household charging box. For how to use the charging equipment, refer to its user manual and follow the operating steps.
  - AC charging box: Consists of a charging box, a charging connector, and a connecting cable. For information on circuit breaker and emergency stop switch, see the charging box user manual.
- AC charging pile
  - Charge the vehicle using an AC charging pile in a public place.
- Charging time: Refer to the charging time message on the instrument cluster or infotainment system.

2. Charging

- Unlock the vehicle and open the charge port door:
  - Close the charge port cap and the port door (see instructions for Mode 2 charging).
- Connect the vehicle port:

- Plug the charging connector into the port and make sure it is tight.

- Charging settings:
  - For AC charging pile/box subject to authentication, swipe the card or scan the QR code. See the user manual for charging pile/box for details.
- The charging connection indicator lights up on the instrument cluster.
- In the charging process, the instrument cluster displays relevant charging parameters and the charging sign.
  - At this point, you can schedule charging on the Infotainment system. See ***P93*** for the setup process.

3. Stopping charging

- End charging:
  - Charging ends automatically when early stop time is due or charging is complete.
  - Press the unlock button on the smart key or press the door handle microswitch while carrying the smart key and pull out the charging connector.
- Unplug the charging connector:
  - Disconnect as per the instructions for ***P88***.
- Close the charge port cap and the port door (see ***P88***).
- Store the equipment properly.
  - If an AC charging pile/box is used, place the charging connector in its designated location.

Using DC Charging Piles*

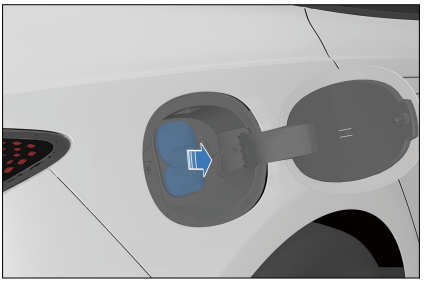
1. Equipment descriptions

- Use the DC battery charger in public places to charge the vehicle. Generally, it is installed in a specific charging station.
- Equipment specifications: Check the instructions of the charging piles.
- Charging time: Refer to the charging time message on the instrument cluster or infotainment system.

2. Charging

DC charging is achieved by connecting the vehicle to a DC charger via its connector.

- Unlock the charge port door, then open the port door and cap.
- Connect the vehicle port:
  - Plug the connector into the port, making sure it is tight.
- Operate the charging equipment according to the instructions to start charging.



- The charging connection indicator lights up on the instrument cluster.
- In the charging process, the instrument cluster or infotainment touchscreen displays relevant charging parameters and the charging sign.

3. Stopping charging

- End charging:
  - Charging ends automatically when early stop time is due or the charging is complete.

- Press the unlock button twice within three seconds or press the microswitch on the door handle to stop charging.

- Unplug the charging connector:
  - Press the unlock button on the smart key or press the door handle microswitch while carrying the smart key and pull out the charging connector.
- When the DC charging pile charging is complete, organise the charging equipment and store the charging connector in its designated position properly.
- Close the charge port cap and the port door.

CAUTION

- If the charging connector cannot be removed after unlocking, try a few more unlocking attempts. If that does not work, try emergency unlocking. For the operating procedure, see ***P98***.
- To unlock the charge port after DC charging, press the unlock button twice within three seconds.
- See the charging instructions for specific charging precautions.

REMINDER

- Do not close the charge port door when the port cap is fully open.

Smart Charging

- Smart charging encompasses scheduled charging and scheduled departure*. Scheduled charging allows you to customise the daily start time of the charging session. Scheduled departure enables you to set a desired departure time, before which the vehicle is fully charged, and if needed, the cabin temperature is optimised and the battery is preheated.
- You can access the setting screen either through the infotainment system or voice control:
  - Tap infotainment system → → **Energy** → **Charging and Discharging** → **Smart Charging** to go to the Scheduled Charging page.
  - You can access this function by touching the app Smart Charging on the infotainment system.
  - Say "Hi BYD, start smart charging/scheduled charging/scheduled departure*", "Hi BYD, I want to make smart charging/scheduled charging/scheduled departure*" , or "Hi BYD, please help me start smart charging/scheduled charging/scheduled departure*".
- To exit the setting screen:
  - Tap or .
  - Say "Hi BYD, end smart charging/scheduled charging/scheduled departure*" or "Hi BYD, exit smart charging/scheduled charging/scheduled departure*".

REMINDER

- Scheduled charging and scheduled departure cannot be activated simultaneously.

Scheduled charging

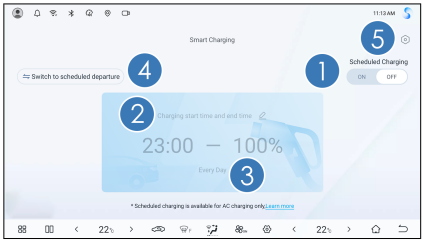
① Scheduled charging switch

② Start and end time of charging

③ Repeat cycle

④ Switch to scheduled departure*

⑤ Settings



- The factory default setting is to charge the vehicle immediately. That is, scheduled charging is disabled.
- To schedule a charging, toggle the switch ① on, set the start and end time ② and repeat cycle ③, and save the settings.
- After scheduled charging is set, if you connect the charging connector or press the START/STOP button to power off the vehicle before the charging start time, you will be reminded on the infotainment touchscreen that scheduled charging has been set. Switch to immediate charging if needed.
- You can tap the intelligent charging setting icon ⑤ to turn off the charging connector connected alert and power-off alert in the Reservation Charging Alert.
- Tap ④ to switch to scheduled departure.

CAUTION

- The scheduled charging function is developed for BYD's slow AC charging equipment only. Disable this function when using non-BYD-certified slow AC charging equipment. Otherwise, scheduled or immediate charging may fail due to no response from the equipment, resulting in low SOC or even low voltage of the high-voltage battery.

REMINDER

- The vehicle's power consumption may increase during the scheduled charging standby period. It is normal for long waiting to result in a reduction of the vehicle's power and driving range.
- The instant charging option on the reminder screen is valid for the current schedule only. To cancel all schedules, toggle scheduled charging off on the corresponding setting screen.
- Scheduled charging is dedicated for BYD AC charging piles. If you need to use this function in a public charging facility, make sure it supports scheduling from the vehicle system.
- When the SOC reaches a critically low level, the vehicle is charged to a minimum level before scheduled charging begins.
- The schedule setting is invalid for DC charging. Charging begins immediately after a DC charging connector is connected.

Scheduled departure*

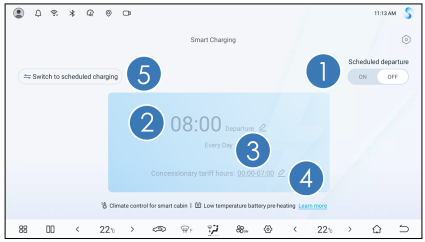
① Scheduled departure switch

② Scheduled departure time

③ Repeat cycle

④ Concessionary tariff hours

⑤ Switch to scheduled charging



- To schedule a charging for departure, toggle the switch ① on, set the intended departure time ②, choose from single-use, daily, or customised repeat cycle options at ③, fill out the concessionary tariff hours ④, and save the settings.
- The system optimises charging by utilizing off-peak hours, ensuring it completes charging when the power price is lower. If the remaining charging time is longer than the remaining travel duration or the concessionary tariff hours, the vehicle initiates immediate charging to maximise the amount of energy it can acquire.
- The preheating function ensures the battery performs well in low-temperature conditions, ready for optimal performance.
- The intelligent cabin temperature control pre-cools or warms the cabin, ahead of the scheduled departure, ensuring a cozy environment.
- Tap ⑤ to switch to scheduled charging.

REMINDER

- When the SOC reaches a critically low level, the vehicle is charged to a minimum level before scheduled charging begins.
- Ensuring full charge, if not complete after the concessionary tariff hours, the vehicle continues charging until it is fully charged.

REMINDER

- When the vehicle is powered on, low-temperature battery preheating and cabin temperature control are deactivated, but the scheduled charging during concessionary tariff hours are still in effect.
- If the current time exceeds the scheduled departure time, both battery preheating and cabin temperature control are deactivated.
- Battery preheating and cabin temperature control incur a temporary battery usage.
- Battery preheating and cabin temperature control are only available when the SOC is above 40%.

Battery Preheating*

- When the vehicle is fast charging at low temperature, users can choose to turn on charge preheating. After the function is turned on, the vehicle will immediately start the charging preheating and adjust the battery temperature to the appropriate range to reduce charging time.
- Tap infotainment system → ⚙ → **Energy** → **Charging and Discharging** to go to the Scheduled Charging page.
- To exit the Smart Charging page, tap the back button ⮌ or the home button ⌂ .

REMINDER

- This function turns off automatically when battery temperature reaches appropriate

REMINDER

range and needs to be turned on next time.

- This function will increase power consumption to a certain extent after the battery temperature is warmed up.

Discharging Instructions

- This vehicle is equipped with vehicle-to-load (V2L) function.

WARNING

- Do not touch any metal terminal of the discharging socket or the vehicle charge port during discharging.
- Stop discharging immediately if there are any abnormalities such as peculiar smell and smoke.
- See ***P84*** for discharging safety warnings.
- Store the product in a cool and dry place when it is not in use.
- When discharging, do not place the equipment in the boot, under the front of the vehicle, or near the tyres to prevent it from falling and being rolled over by the vehicle and trampled on.
- Never use the charging equipment if the power strip cable becomes soft, the charging connector cable is worn out, the insulation layer is cracked, or any other damage occurs.
- Never use the equipment when the discharging connector or power strip is disconnected or

WARNING

broken, or when there is any sign of surface damage.

CAUTION

- Avoiding damage to the discharging equipment (precautions for discharging equipment):
  - Prevent the discharging equipment from any mechanical impact, such as falling and colliding with other objects.
  - Do not place the discharging equipment near heaters or other heat sources.
- Before discharging, confirm the vehicle SOC and estimate the remaining driving range.
- Before V2L discharging, ensure that the load is turned off.

REMINDER

- The V2L function is recommended only when the vehicle SOC is high.
- The V2L function is restricted when the vehicle SOC is low.
- When the vehicle is powered off, the static power consumption of the vehicle will increase if the V2L connection device is connected for an extended period without any output. Therefore, removing the discharging/charging connector is recommended when the device is not used.

Discharging

Starting discharging

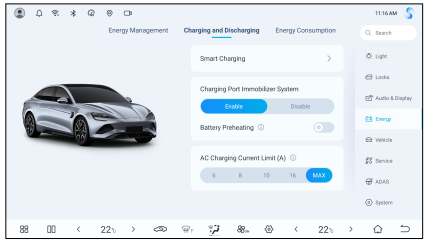
- Before discharging, disarm the anti-theft alarm system.
- Unlock the charge port door, and then open the port door and cap.
- Check before discharging:
  1. Ensure that the vehicle SOC is at least 15%.
  2. Ensure the V2L connecting device casing is not cracked, and its plug is free from rust or obstructions.
  3. Ensure that there is no water or foreign material inside the charge port and that metal terminals are not damaged and free from rust or corrosion.
  - Should not discharge if the above second or third condition is found; otherwise, short circuit or electric shock so caused could lead to personal injury.
- Connect the discharge connection device:
  - Connect the V2L discharging connector to the charge port and confirm that it is connected in place.
- After the switch button* on the discharging socket is pressed, the socket indicator stays on (red), indicating that the socket can be used.
- Discharging starts:
  - After the connection is made, discharge begins and respective information is displayed on the instrument cluster.

Stopping discharging

- Stop discharging:
  - Disconnect the load.
- Disconnect the discharge connection device:
  - Press the mechanical button on the discharging connector and remove the connector from the charge port.
  - Close the charge port cap and the port door.
- Organize the equipment:
  - Store the equipment properly when discharging is complete.

Charging Port Immobiliser System

- In order to prevent the charging connector from being stolen, the vehicle charge port is anti-theft with the charging port immobiliser system. The charging port immobiliser system is disabled by default. To enable it, go to the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Energy** → **Charging and Discharging**.
- Enter **Charging Port Immobiliser System** and tap **Enable** or **Disable**.
- When the anti-theft mode of charge port electric lock is activated, the charging connector will lock if the user connects the charging connector and the four doors, bonnet and boot lid are locked. To disconnect the connector, the user needs to unlock the vehicle.



Unlocking

- When the immobiliser is enabled, unlock the vehicle and unplug the

charging connector during charging in the following ways:

- When it is on OFF status, press the unlock button on the smart key to unlock.
- Press the microswitch on the exterior handle of the driver's door to unlock.
- Press the central unlock button on the driver's door to unlock.

No.	Charging Port Immobiliser System Status	Vehicle Door Anti-theft Lock Status	Charging Connector Removable or Not
1	Enabled	Locked	No
2	Enabled	Enabled	Yes
3	Disabled	Locked	Yes
4	Disabled	Enabled	Yes

WARNING

- The connector needs to be pulled out within 30 seconds after it is unlocked. Otherwise, the electric lock will lock again.

Emergency Unlocking of the Charge Port

- When charging connector cannot be unplugged due to failure of the anti-theft lock, unlock the charge port manually.

Charge port anti-theft lock

1. Open the boot, there is an emergency cable for the charging connector on the right side panel inside the boot.
2. Unlock the charging connector by unlocking the emergency cable latch and pulling the emergency cable.
3. Reset the emergency cable latch after the unlocking is complete.



REMINDER

- If the above functions are abnormal or fail, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.

Driving Range Display

The "Range Display Mode" can be set to improve driving experience. The default setting is "Standard". You can personalise it by Infotainment touchscreen→ ⚙ → **Audio & Display** → **Instrument**.

- Standard mode: displays the driving range based on the result of comprehensive working condition test.

- Dynamic mode: displays the estimated driving range based on the available battery power and current average energy consumption.
- The set driving range display mode is memorised by the system. When the vehicle is powered off and then on, the display mode set last time will be maintained.

REMINDER

- When the dynamic driving range display mode is set:
  - The driving range that is displayed after a full charge may vary, depending on calculations of the energy consumed the last time the vehicle is used.
  - The displayed driving range is adjusted based on whether the A/C is on, selection of driving mode, and the driver's driving habits, so that this range can be closer to the estimated remaining range under current use.

Regenerative Braking Settings

Energy regeneration: In this process, the motor will generate reverse torque when the vehicle is decelerating, and the generated energy will be recovered and reused to improve the energy utilization rate of the vehicle.

- Brakes regeneration:
  - When the vehicle is running in D position, if you completely release the accelerator pedal and depress the brake pedal, and the vehicle is in a stable state, priority is given to responding to motor regeneration for deceleration during braking and deceleration. When the motor capacity is insufficient, the hydraulic brake will actively intervene to maintain the deceleration demand of the vehicle, and the generated energy will be recovered to improve the vehicle economy.
- Sliding recycling:
  - When the vehicle is running in D position, if you release the accelerator pedal below a certain depth, the motor will output reverse torque to decelerate the vehicle, and the generated energy will be recovered to improve the vehicle economy.
- During the driving, energy is recovered through regenerative brakes when the vehicle decelerates. For higher efficiency, do not accelerate or decelerate the vehicle unnecessarily.
- The energy regeneration intensity can be set with the regenerative mode button or on the infotainment touchscreen.
  - Standard: When the accelerator pedal is released, the motor controller recovers energy in the standard level, and the vehicle deceleration is in the standard level.
  - High: When the accelerator pedal is released, the motor controller recovers more energy, and the vehicle deceleration is high.
- The corresponding settings can be made in infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Energy** → **Energy Manager** → **Regenerative Braking**.
- You can select the regeneration intensity based on the deceleration sense when releasing the accelerator pedal. Different deceleration senses deliver different driving experiences.

- The set energy regeneration intensity will be memorised. When the vehicle is powered off and then on, the regenerative braking mode set last time will be maintained.

REMINDER

- Do not set the regeneration intensity when driving, as this may distract the driver's attention, causing an accident.

Batteries

High-Voltage Battery

- The vehicle is powered by a high-voltage battery that can be charged and discharged repeatedly. The high-voltage battery is charged by an external power source or through energy recovery when the vehicle brakes or coasts.
- The high-voltage battery is located under the vehicle floor, so be careful and slow down to avoid bumping when driving on bumpy or uneven roads. If bumping occurs, go to a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for maintenance.

Battery Properties

- It is normal that vehicle performance is affected by battery electrochemical properties and self-protection and varies to some extent in the following conditions:
  - When SOC is high, the regenerative braking performance may decline.
  - The vehicle switches to trickle charging mode at high SOC. If the charging time is prolonged, the estimated remaining charging time displayed on the instrument cluster may not be accurate.
  - When SOC is low, the acceleration performance may decline.
  - When the high-voltage battery is low, the V2L* function cannot be used as normal. Charge the battery promptly.
  - At high or low temperatures, it is normal that the charging and discharging capabilities of the high-voltage battery decline, and the charging time is prolonged. Power performance may also decline under extreme temperatures.
  - When charging in low temperatures, the temperature control system can significantly improve charging capability. See Charging Precautions for details.
  - When the vehicle is used at low temperatures, the battery's temperature control system will start heating the battery as appropriate to ensure the driving power and discharging performance and improve your driving experience. When the vehicle is driven over short distances, heating may be ineffective, which increases power consumption and decreases driving range.
- When the high-voltage battery is normal, the driving range of the vehicle varies with the following factors:
  - Driving habit: For example, the range in frequent acceleration or deceleration is shorter than that at constant speeds, and the range is shorter when driving at high speeds than when at low speeds.
  - Road conditions: For example, the range driven in rough conditions or on long slopes is shorter than that in normal conditions and on even roads.

- Temperature: The driving range at low temperatures is shorter than that at ambient temperatures.
- Use of electric equipment: For example, the range driven with A/C on is shorter than that with A/C off.
- Usable capacity of the high-voltage battery is lower in cold weather and reduces as the temperature decreases. If the vehicle with high battery level is charged at low temperatures, the SOC may quickly jump to 100%.

- The available battery capacity decreases as the vehicle is used over time.

Battery Usage Tips

- It is recommended to use the vehicle at temperatures between 14°F (-10°C) to 104°F (40°C). When SOC is low, timely charge the vehicle to ensure enough driving range and good acceleration performance.
- To ensure long term performance, avoid driving in extreme temperatures for over 24 hours.
- In low ambient temperatures, if the vehicle must be stored for a long time, it can be placed in an underground garage or other warmer area to reduce loss of battery heat, maintaining vehicle performance.
- Frequent and sudden acceleration or deceleration should be avoided. Drive the vehicle on flat and dry roads. When necessary, turn off high-power equipment such as A/C or adjust the A/C temperature to reduce power consumption of such devices and increase the driving range.
- Battery temperature is lower after low-temperature static, you can drive for a period of time, until the battery temperature rises before charging; after a long period of high-speed driving, the maximum temperature of the battery may be higher, which will also limit the charging power.
- When the vehicle is used for the first time or after a long idle period, the SOC displayed on the instrument cluster may not be correct. It is recommended to fully charge the vehicle first.
- It is recommended to fully charge the vehicle at a regular basis (at least once a week), and fully charge it from low battery (SOC <10%) once every three to six months.
- Under extreme working conditions (such as frequent sudden acceleration/deceleration) that cause battery overheating, if the temperature of high-voltage battery is excessively high, it is normal for discharging capability to decrease gradually. If the battery temperature keeps rising, the fault warning light lights up on the instrument cluster. In that case, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
- When the battery SOC increases or decreases abnormally, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for inspection.

WARNING

- In the event of an emergency or accident, be aware of the following warnings:
  - To avoid personal injury, do not touch the high-voltage battery directly.
  - Please contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider as soon as possible.

WARNING

- If the high-voltage battery is damaged and leaking fluid, avoid any contact with the fluid. If it comes into contact with skin or eyes, rinse immediately with plenty of water, and seek immediate medical attention.
- If the vehicle catches fire, use dedicated fire extinguishers instead of water-based fire extinguishers.

CAUTION

- To ensure safety of the high-voltage battery, stop the vehicle away from flammable and explosive materials, ignition sources and various hazardous chemicals.
- The available battery capacity decreases as the vehicle is used over time.
- Prolonged exposure to heat sources and direct sunlight will reduce high-voltage battery service life.
- When the vehicle is not to be operated for an extended period (over seven days), it is recommended that the battery SOC should be kept at 40%-60% to prolong its service life. When the vehicle is not to be operated for over three months, the high-voltage battery must be fully charged and then discharged to 40%-60% every three months. Otherwise, over-discharge may lead to battery performance degradation or even damage. Any vehicle fault or damage so caused will not be warranted.

CAUTION

- As the high-voltage battery is arranged at the bottom of the vehicle, careful driving is recommended in case of bumpy roads. If there is a collision with the high-voltage battery, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider immediately for maintenance.
- No one is allowed to enter the vehicle when the battery pack needs to be repaired.

Recycling the High-Voltage Battery

How to scrap an NEV:

1. Take the vehicle to the BYD recycling service provider that will assess the residual value of the high-voltage battery.
2. Take the assessed vehicle to the recycling organisation to disassemble the high-voltage battery.
3. Take the battery to the recycling service provider which will buy back the battery.

WARNING

- New energy car owners have the responsibility and obligation to hand over waste high-voltage batteries to the recycling service outlet. Anyone who hands over a used high-voltage battery to any other organisation or individual, or removes/disassembles a high-voltage battery without authorisation, shall be liable for any environmental pollution or safety incident so caused.

Low-Voltage Battery

The low-voltage battery (12V battery) is located under the left rear seat.

- Battery working modes include "Normal", "Sleep", "Ultra-low Power", "Low-Voltage Protection". The purpose is to protect the battery cell from damage. If the vehicle system is in good condition, the vehicle switches between these modes automatically, having no effect on your use of the vehicle.
- To prevent the SOC of the low-voltage battery becoming too low, the intelligent charging function is triggered automatically when conditions are met (ignition off, high-voltage battery discharging allowed, and low-voltage battery level below the design value).
- When the intelligent charging function is triggered, the low-voltage battery is charged through the high-voltage battery. Therefore, it is normal that the SOC or the driving range displayed on the instrument cluster decreases when the vehicle is powered on after an idle period.
- If smart charging fails, the low-voltage battery may cut off the vehicle's power supply. If you find before use that the vehicle is not powered, try to activate the low-voltage battery by pressing the driver's door microswitch continuously, and immediately power on the vehicle to charge the low-voltage battery. It is recommended to charge it for more than one hour.

CAUTION

- The low-voltage battery contains relays. Thus, it is normal that relay operating sounds may be emitted from the battery.

CAUTION

- The low-voltage battery shall be charged with professional charging tools, and shall not be removed for recharging by users themselves.
- Do not jump-start the vehicle with another vehicle, as this may damage the low-voltage battery.
- The low-voltage battery is a battery on low-voltage platform that is different from an ordinary lead-acid battery. Please read the instructions for use in this manual in detail.
- The low-voltage battery contains a power manager. To prevent damage to the battery or injury, do not disassemble or repair the battery without authorisation.
- The low-voltage battery needs to communicate with the vehicle for normal use, so it is important to connect its connector and wiring harness correctly.

Intelligent Charging

- If the high-voltage battery has sufficient power, it will charge the low-voltage battery when the latter is detected to be low.

REMINDER

- When the vehicle is stored for a long time, the intelligent charging function may be activated and the engine compartment fan may be activated, which is normal.
- Power for intelligent charging comes from the high-voltage battery pack, so it is normal that

REMINDER

an SOC decrease is noticed when the vehicle is powered on.

Usage Precautions

Break-in Period

- If the powertrain is hard to start or frequently stops turning, inspect the vehicle immediately.
- If the powertrain makes any abnormal sounds, stop the vehicle for inspection.
- If the powertrain has severe coolant and oil leakage, stop the vehicle for inspection.
- The powertrain needs break-in. This should preferably be done within the first 1,243 miles (2,000 km) in economic mode. Steady driving instead of high-speed driving is recommended. The following practices effectively prolong vehicle service life:
  - Avoid flooring the accelerator pedal when starting and driving the vehicle.
  - Do not maintain a high or low speed for too long.
  - Avoid speeding.
  - Do not use the vehicle to tow other vehicles within the first 1,243 miles (2,000 km) of mileage.

Trailer Towing*

- The vehicle can tow a trailer only when equipped with towing function.
- Do not make non-approved modifications. Contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider to install the towing kit and related software updates. BYD does not assume any responsibility for injuries or damage caused by non-approved modifications.
- The towing capacity depends on various factors such as vehicle specifications, loads, road conditions, and trailer specifications. The total towing weight must not exceed the limits below:

Item	Parameter	Note
Maximum towing capacity (braked)	2204 lb/1000 kg (rear-wheel drive) 3306 lb/1500 kg (four-wheel drive)	Maximum total towing capacity allowed when the trailer is braked
Maximum towing capacity (unbraked)	1653 lb/750 kg	Maximum total towing capacity allowed when the trailer is unbraked
Maximum vertical load	165 lb/75 kg	Maximum vertical load allowed on ball joint

1. The maximum allowed towing capacity equals the total trailer weight, which includes all cargo and additional equipment.

Item	Parameter	Note
2. Maximum vertical load refers to the downward pressure exerted by the weight of the trailer on the trailer hitch when the vehicle and the trailer are stationary.		

- To tow a trailer, adjust the tyre pressure to accommodate additional loads. Keep front tyres inflated to 2.7 bar (270 kPa), rear tyres to 3.1 bar (310 kPa) for the rear wheels (rear drive with short range), and 3.2 bar (320 kPa) for the rear wheels (rear drive with extended range, 4WD).
- Observe applicable local laws and regulations regarding towing. For driving safety, avoid speeding and overloading.
- For towing, the technically permissible maximum mass on the rear axle may be exceeded by no more than 15% and the technically permissible laden mass of the vehicle may be exceeded by no more than 165 lb (75 kg). In these instances, the vehicle speed must not exceed 62 mph (100 km/h) and the rear tyre pressure must be at least 0.2 bar (20 kPa) above the tyre pressure recommended for normal use.
- Towing other vehicles will have an adverse impact on the vehicle, including maneuverability, performance, braking, endurance, economic driving or power consumption.
- BYD does not assume any responsibility for damage or injuries resulting from towing a trailer due to failure to comply with the proper guidelines. Damage caused by towing a trailer is not covered by the warranty.
- For detailed towing instructions, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.

WARNING

- The tow bar is for towing trailers only. Do not use it to get unstuck or tow trapped vehicles to prevent vehicle damage and even personal injuries.

Driving Safety Precautions

No Drunk Driving

Even a small amount of alcohol can reduce a driver's ability to respond to traffic condition changes. The higher the level of alcohol, the less responsive the driver will be. Therefore, never drive while under the influence.

No Speeding

Speeding is a major cause of fatal accidents. Faster speeds generally entail higher risk. Therefore, maintain a speed safe for the road traffic conditions.

Keeping the Vehicle Safe for Driving

Tyre bursts and mechanical faults are extremely dangerous. To reduce the possibility of such faults, frequently check the vehicle's condition, and regularly complete the specified inspections.

CAUTION

- Any driver must possess a driver's license before driving a vehicle.
- Do not drive when fatigued.

CAUTION

- Always follow the traffic regulations when driving a vehicle.
- During driving, please focus on driving, and avoid activities unrelated to driving (such as making / receiving phone calls and adjusting buttons).

Vehicle Use Suggestions

Suggestions for prolong the battery usage:

- When the vehicle is not to be operated for an extended period (over seven days), it is recommended that the battery SOC should be kept at 40%-60%, or it will reduce high-voltage battery service life.
- When the vehicle is not to be operated for over three months, the high-voltage battery must be fully charged and then discharged to 40%-60%. Otherwise, over-discharge may lead to battery performance degradation or even damage. Any vehicle fault or damage so caused will not be warranted.
- During operation of the vehicle, if the instrument cluster displays the pure electric driving mileage as 0, it indicates the battery SOC is low. In this case, charge the high-voltage battery in time and avoid operating the vehicle with low SOC for a long time.
- For optimal battery performance, use a charging connector to fully charge the battery regularly, and the recommended frequency is once a week at least.
- To maintain long-term performance, avoid continuously exposing the vehicle to an environment with a temperature above 140°F (60°C) or below -22°F (-30°C) for over 24 hours.
- If the tray dented inward or there is scarification under the battery package tray, it is suggested to check at a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
- During operation of the vehicle, avoid repeated rapid acceleration or deceleration whenever possible.
- During operation of the vehicle, avoid operating the vehicle continuously for a long time whenever possible; otherwise, the excessively high battery temperature will affect vehicle performance.
- If the instrument cluster malfunctions when driving, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible.
- When the high-voltage battery temperature is high, the vehicle performance will be limited to some extent. In this case, stop the vehicle and wait until the temperature drops before operating.

REMINDER

- If the meter drops to 0, the battery must be recharged. If it is not recharged within seven days, the battery may suffer permanent damage. Such damage is not covered by BYD warranty terms.
- Driving range depends on many factors, such as the vehicle's available power, vehicle age (current battery life), weather, temperature, road conditions and driving habits. Compared with under normal temperatures, the pure-electric driving range is somewhat reduced and power performance will also be affected

REMINDER

in low or high temperature environments.

Saving Energy and Extending Vehicle Service Life

- Saving energy is simple and easy, and it helps prolong the vehicle's service life.
- Here are some tips for saving energy and repair cost:

1. Regenerative braking setting:

- The vehicle is provided with an energy recovery function. Set the energy recovery intensity on the infotainment system or by the regenerative braking mode button. In high energy recovery mode, more energy is recovered during vehicle braking and coasting. Please set to suit to your driving habits.

2. Maintaining constant speed:

- Constant speeds save energy. Sudden acceleration, sharp turns and emergency braking increase consumption.
- Speeds should be kept constant according to traffic conditions. Additional energy is consumed each time the accelerator is pushed.
- Acceleration should be gradual. Avoid sudden startup, acceleration, or deceleration.
- Prevent emergency braking, and subsequent brake wear, by keeping an appropriate distance from vehicles ahead, and paying attention to traffic lights.
- Congested roads increase energy consumption.
- Keep moderate speeds in motorways. The higher the speed, the higher the consumption. Maintaining vehicle speed within the economical speed range can save power.

3. Reducing load:

- Energy consumption is higher when air conditioning is used. Turn off the A/C to reduce power consumption. When outside temperatures are moderate, use fresh air mode.
- Do not overload the vehicle unnecessarily. Excessive weights will add the load of vehicle, increasing energy consumption.

4. Other tips:

- Make sure tyre pressure is correct. Low tyre pressure increases energy consumption and wear.
- Keep front wheels properly aligned, avoid driving into kerbstones, and drive slowly in rough terrain. Misalignment of the front wheels not only increases tyre wear, but also increases load on the powertrain and power consumption.
- Keep the bottom of the vehicle clean and mud free. This reduces vehicle weight and prevents corrosion.

WARNING

- Do not coast in Neutral gear.

Carrying Luggage

- This vehicle has multiple storage spaces. Overloading or improper accommodation may affect maneuverability, stability and normal operation of the vehicle, and reduce its safety.
- The glove box, storage boxes on interior trim panels and seatback

pockets are designed for small and light objects, while the boot for large and heavy objects.

- Make sure the vehicle's total load (vehicle + passengers + luggage) remains within the specified maximum weight.

WARNING

- Overloading and improper accommodation may affect stability and vehicle control, which may lead to accidents.
- Observe the maximum weight limit and other loading guidelines in this manual.
- Do not carry highly magnetic items, as they might interfere in the vehicle's operating functions.

Carrying Luggage in the Passenger Area

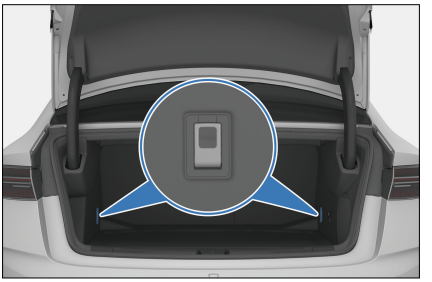
- All items that could be thrown inwards and thus injure occupants in case of a collision must be properly placed and secured.
- Do not place any objects on the inner side of rear windscreen. Otherwise, these objects will block the driver's line of sight and will be thrown here and there inside the vehicle in case of collision.
- Ensure that objects placed on the floor behind the front seat do not roll under the seat, so as to avoid affecting the driver's ability to control the pedals or normal seat adjustment. Do not stack items to a height taller than the front seats' seatbacks.
- Make sure the glove box is always closed while driving. If the glove box is open, the occupant's knees may be injured in case of a collision or an emergency stop.

REMINDER

- Do not pile up toys in the vehicle, as this may affect driving safety and present a hazard to the children, especially in case of emergency braking or collision.

Loading the Boot

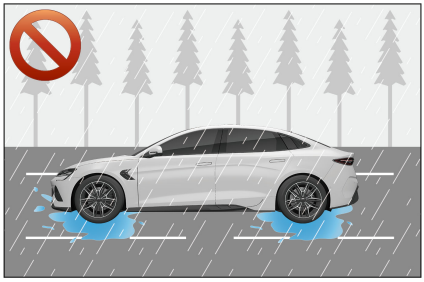
- The side panels of the boot are equipped with luggage anchors.
- Place luggage evenly in the boot. Put heavier items at the bottom and as far in as possible.
- Secure items with ropes or straps so that they will not move while driving. Do not stack items to a height taller than seatbacks.



- For boot strapping or fastening supplies, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.

Wading into Water

- Check water depth before driving into flooded areas, it must not exceed the vehicle's lower edge.
- If crossing a flooded area is necessary, turn off the air conditioner and keep acceleration steady to slowly cross over.



- Never stop, back up, or turn off the vehicle in flooded areas.
- Be careful when driving through deep water, as brakes may get wet. After crossing over, press the brake pedal several times to dry out the discs and recover brake performance.

WARNING

- Drive carefully to avoid accident when there is any water or slurry on the brake disc surface, as this may increase the brake response time thus extending the braking distance.
- Carefully apply any wet brake, and remove ice or water on it.
- Avoid emergency braking after driving through any waterlogged road section.
- If the vehicle drives on the waterlogged road, prevent water from entering the motor, or the motor will be damaged seriously. Such damaged is not covered by the vehicle's warranty
- Other systems like transmission, driving and electrical systems may also be seriously damaged upon submersion. Such damage is not covered by the vehicle's warranty either.

WARNING

- Be sure to find a sheltered place when charging the vehicle on rainy days. If the vehicle is immersed in water or wades through water over the door sill, which may cause water ingress in high-voltage components, promptly contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for testing and troubleshooting.
- Do not drive on roads where the depth of accumulated water exceeds half of the tyres.

Influence of water ingress in high-voltage components:

- Water getting into high-voltage components, which are electronic devices, may not be fully dried out by any means.
- Water ingress seriously compromises insulation of high-voltage components, and conductive substances in water may lead to short circuit of high-voltage components or such risk in the entire high-voltage system. In this case, the safety and service performance of the vehicle will be severely affected.
- The reduced ingress protection rating and voltage withstanding performance due to water in high-voltage components pose a high safety risk.

Fire Prevention

To prevent vehicle fires in a timely and effective manner, pay attention to the following during use of the vehicle:

- No flammable or explosive items are allowed in the vehicle.

- Temperatures may reach 140°F - 158°F (60°C - 70°C) in a vehicle exposed to direct sunlight in summer. Therefore, flammable and explosive items, such as lighters, cleaning agents and perfumes, stored in the vehicle can cause a fire or even explosion easily.

- Make sure cigarettes are thoroughly put out.
  - Smoking is harmful to your health and may cause a fire. Cigarettes that not thoroughly put out may cause a fire.
- It is recommended to go to a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for regular vehicle checks.
  - Check vehicle wiring, connections, wiring harnesses, insulation, and fixed position regularly. Deal with identified problems promptly.
- Do not refit vehicle wiring or add any unauthorised electrical appliance.
  - The addition of extra electrical appliances, such as high-power audio systems, lights, etc., may overload the vehicle wiring, overheat the wiring harness and increase the risk of fire.
  - Improper refitting of electrical appliances or wiring may cause a fire due to contact resistance and abnormal heating. Other replacement wires or fuses in excess of relevant electrical rating are strictly prohibited.
- Select a proper parking location.
  - Try to avoid sun exposure when parking the vehicle.
  - When the vehicle is parked, especially in summer, do check whether there are any flammables such as dry grasses, dead woods, leaves or wheat straws under the vehicle. If any, a fire may be caused.
  - When the vehicle is running, avoid driving on the road sections piled up with flammables such as dry leaves, wheat straws and grasses, or immediately stop the vehicle to check whether any flammables are carried along after passing such road sections.
- Keep a lightweight fire extinguisher in the vehicle and know how to use it.
  - In order to ensure vehicle safety, a fire extinguisher should be equipped in the vehicle, and be checked and replaced regularly. Also, you should familiarise yourself with use of the fire extinguisher and be prepared for any accidents.
- Disconnect the negative cable of the low-voltage battery when the vehicle is being serviced or repaired.
- In the event of a fire in the vehicle, take effective measures in a timely and calm manner to minimise any losses:
  - Fires typically show initial warning signs, such as abnormal noises and odours in the vehicle body. When abnormal conditions are found, turn off and stop the vehicle immediately. It is best to park the vehicle in a windproof place, and then put out the fire using the fire extinguisher in the vehicle.
  - Call the fire alarm in time, and also dial the insurance company's reporting number and ask the company to come to the fire site for handling.
  - Look for the ignition point. If the engine compartment smokes, do not open the bonnet immediately. (This will let a large amount of air in and cause fire spreading. There is limited comburent in the cabin. Keeping the

bonnet closed can control the fire so that the fire can be easily put out). Point the on-board fire extinguisher at the ignition point from the bonnet gap to put the fire out, or seek help from the passing cars. If you can borrow more fire extinguishers, open the bonnet to put it out when you cannot see any flame from outside.

- If the fire brigade is involved, ask for a duty performance certificate and a description of fire cause.
- After occurrence of the accident, contact the insurance company for post-event handling in a timely manner.

REMINDER

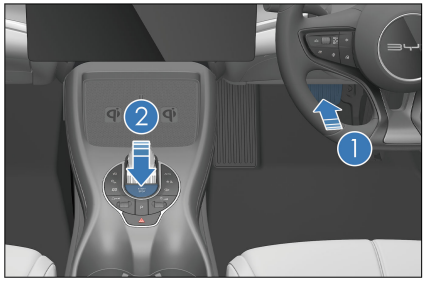
- In order to mitigate losses in the event of an accident, the purchase of commercial insurance (fire loss, theft, etc.) is recommended.

Starting and Driving

Starting the Vehicle

In normal cases, start the vehicle as below:

- Carry a valid smart key with you, depress the brake pedal ① and press the START/STOP button ② at the same time, and then the OK indicator on the instrument cluster illuminates, indicating that the vehicle is ready for driving.
- Shift to Drive or Reverse, and then the electronic parking brake will be released automatically. Do not start driving the vehicle until hearing a motor release sound from the electronic parking brake system.



Situations when the vehicle cannot power on

- The vehicle cannot power on in the following situations:
  - After pressing the START/STOP button, the smart key warning light turns on, a beep sounds, and the message "No key detected" is displayed on the instrument cluster. This means that the key is not in the vehicle or cannot be detected.
  - When the key is somewhere unsuitable for detection, such as on the floor, in the cup holder, boot or the right storage compartment, it cannot start the vehicle either.
- Pressing the START button may not enable the start function due to:
  - If the electronic smart key does not work, the smart key system warning indicator on the combination instrument flashes, and the message "Low key battery" is displayed on the information display screen in the middle of the combination instrument, indicating that the key battery may have run out. Replace the electronic smart key battery as soon as possible with reference to the operation procedure given in ***P218***.
  - Except for causes mentioned above, the smart access and start system also fails to work normally under some conditions due to different

service environments. Refer to ***P59*** for relevant details.

REMINDER

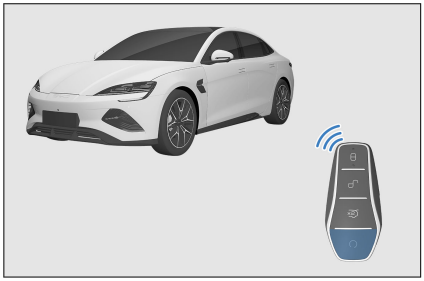
- The vehicle cannot be started when the electronic key is left stationary for more than two minutes (depending on the configuration of the vehicle).

Starting the vehicle in emergencies

- Engage the parking brake firmly.
- Turn off all the unnecessary lights and accessories.
- The vehicle is in Park.
- Switch the ignition off.
- The electronic smart key is in the vehicle.
- Press and hold the smart key start button for over 15 seconds.

Remote Start

1. Press and hold the remote start/stop button on the electronic smart key for two seconds to start the vehicle. After it is started, turn signals will flash three times.
2. If there is no valid operation within 10 minutes after remote start, the vehicle stops and powers off, and turn signals flash twice.



3. After the vehicle is started, pressing and holding the remote start/stop button on the smart key for two seconds switches the ignition off. The turn signals then flash twice.

Auto Power On/Off*

- Auto power on/off is disabled by factory default. You can enable this feature in the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Vehicle** → **Comfort Driving**.
- When auto power on is enabled, power on the vehicle in either of the following two methods:
  - Method 1: After unlocking with the valid smart key, microswitch, NFC key* or by using the BYD App*, open the driver's door for the first time while carrying the valid key to activate the feature.
  - Method 2: Press the brake pedal while carrying the valid smart key, NFC key* or using the BYD App* to let the vehicle become drive-ready.
- When auto power off is enabled, power off the vehicle in either of the following two methods:
  - Method 1: Press the START/STOP button.
  - Method 2: Shift to Park, and lock from the outside with the valid smart key, microswitch, NFC key* or using the BYD App*.

REMINDER

- Auto power on is operational only when the driver's door is opened for the first time after unlocking.
- If a door other than the driver's door is first opened after unlocking:

REMINDER

- When the ignition is still off, opening the driver's door the first time switches it on.
- When the ignition has been switched on and then off, opening the driver's door does not switches it back on.

- When auto power on is disabled, the brake pedal and the START/STOP button must be pressed to power on the vehicle.
- Auto power on is not operational when the bonnet is open.
- The vehicle responds to the locking command from the BYD App, but not the off command. This prevents false triggering.

Driving

Safety Check before Driving

It is advisable to carry out a safety check before driving long distance, which ensures your driving safety and enhances your driving experience. The vehicle can also be taken to a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for inspection.

Exterior

- Tyres: Check tyre pressure and carefully inspect tyres for any cut, damage, foreign material, anomaly, and excessive wear.
- Lug nuts: Ensure all nuts are fitted and tightened.
- Lighting: Make sure headlights, position lights, turn signals and all other lights are working normally. Check headlight intensity.

Interior

- Seat belts: Check whether seat belts can be properly fastened. Verify that seat belts are not worn or scratched.
- Instrument cluster: Particularly, verify that maintenance indicator, instrument cluster lighting, and defroster work properly.
- Brake pedal: Verify that there is enough space for the brake pedal to work.
- Low-voltage battery and cables: Check connectors for any corrosion or looseness and any cracks in the low-voltage housing under the left rear seat cushion.

In the engine compartment

- Spare fuses: Verify that spare fuses of all rated charges in the fuse box are available.
- Coolant level: Verify that coolant level is correct.

Check after starting

- Instrument cluster: Confirm that the maintenance indicator and the speedometer work normally.
- Brakes: In a safe area, drive the vehicle straight, hold the steering wheel tightly, decelerate and apply the brake. Verify that the vehicle maintains a straight direction.
- Other abnormalities: Check for loose parts, leaks, and unusual noises.

If everything is OK, just enjoy your driving.

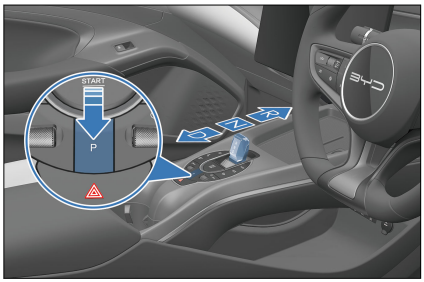
Preparations before Driving

- Check the surroundings before getting into the vehicle.
- Adjust seat position, seatback angle, cushion height, headrest height, and the steering wheel angle and height.

- Adjust interior rearview mirror and side mirrors.
- Close all doors.
- Fasten the seat belts.

Gear Shift Controls

- The gear position of the gear shift controls is marked on the lever.
- "P": Park, press this button to park the vehicle and the parking indicator will light up. Press the brake pedal to start the vehicle, you may shift from Park to another gear.



CAUTION

- To prevent damage, press the "P" button only after the vehicle has completely stopped.

- "R": Reverse, used only when the vehicle has come to a complete stop.
- "N": Neutral, used for temporary stop. Under all circumstances, always shift to Park before the driver gets out.
- "D": Drive, shift to Drive gear to drive the vehicle normally.
- If the shift is successful, the lever returns to its middle position after it is released.
- Before shifting into "D", ensure that the power switch is on "OK"
- Shifting out of Park or into a driving gear requires pressing the brake pedal. For details, see the prompt message on the instrument cluster.
- To prevent unintended vehicle movement, press the "P" button once the vehicle has stopped completely. The electronic parking brake (EPB) is automatically applied and the EPB indicator lights up.

WARNING

- Transmission may be seriously damaged due to lack of lubrication if the vehicle is allowed to move for too long after the motor is turned off and "N" gear is engaged.
- When the motor is running and the vehicle is in the "R"/"D" gear, always stop the vehicle by stepping on the brake pedal, as there is still force transmitted from the actuator and the vehicle can travel slowly even in its idle condition.
- If you want to shift a gear while driving forward, do not step on the accelerator pedal to prevent accidents.
- Never shift to Reverse or press the "P" button while the vehicle is moving, in order to prevent accidents.
- Never coast downhill in Neutral or Park, even if the motor is not running.
- If the EPB indicator fails to turn on after the vehicle is shifted into “P”, go to the infotainment touchscreen to enable the EPB. In that case, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service

WARNING

provider for vehicle inspection as soon as possible.

Electronic Parking Brake (EPB)

Be sure to engage the EPB every time before parking and leaving the vehicle.

Engaging EPB Manually

When the vehicle is not in Park and EPB is released, press the brake pedal and engage EPB on the infotainment touchscreen. Then, EPB applies appropriate parking force, and Ⓟ on the instrument cluster flashes and then stays on, indicating that EPB is engaged. In addition, a text prompt "EPB activated" is displayed.

CAUTION

- When Ⓟ flashes, EPB is working. If the vehicle is on a slope, do not release the brake pedal until Ⓟ is steady on. Otherwise the vehicle may move down.

Engaging EPB Automatically

Engaging EPB automatically is designed to improve vehicle safety. Excessive reliance on or frequent use of the function is not recommended. For safety reasons, make sure that the vehicle is shifted into Park and the EPB is engaged before getting off.

Engaging EPB automatically with the ignition off

- When the ignition is switched off, EPB is engaged automatically and Ⓟ lights up on the instrument cluster.

Engaging EPB automatically when shifting into Park

- Press the brake pedal to stop the vehicle steadily and shift into Park. EPB is engaged automatically. Do not release the brake pedal until Ⓟ on the instrument cluster stops flashing and becomes steady on and the "EPB ON" message is displayed.
- Press the brake pedal to bring the vehicle to a complete stop. If the driver's door is opened while the gear is in Drive or Reverse, the vehicle will be automatically shifted to Park and the EPB will be engaged. Do not release the brake pedal until the indicator Ⓟ on the instrument cluster stops flashing and becomes steady on and the "EPB ON" message is displayed.

WARNING

- Refrain from excessively utilizing the automatic EPB engagement triggered by opening the driver's door, as it may result in the EPB not engaging properly or insufficient clamping force, leading to rollaway risks. For safety, make sure that the vehicle is shifted into Park and the EPB is engaged before getting off.

CAUTION

- Do not release the brake pedal early in the process, especially when the vehicle is stopped on a slope; otherwise the vehicle may slip back.

CAUTION

- Engaging EPB automatically with the ignition off is designed to improve the vehicle safety. Excessive reliance or frequent use of the function may lead to low SOC of low-voltage battery, resulting in the risk of vehicle slipping due to insufficient EPB clamping force. For safety, make sure that the vehicle is shifted into Park and the EPB is engaged before getting off.

Automatic EPB Release upon Vehicle Start

Releasing by shifting gear

- With the vehicle parked, start the vehicle, press and hold the brake pedal, and shift from Park or Neutral into a driving gear such as Drive or Reverse. EPB is released automatically, the indicator goes off, and the "EPB released" message is displayed.

CAUTION

- Be sure to always press and hold the brake pedal when shifting gears. Release the pedal only after the intended gear is displayed on the instrument cluster.
- Within several seconds after the vehicle is started, the EPB system performs a power-on self-test. During this process, the EPB system does not respond to any operations.

Releasing by pressing the accelerator pedal

- When the vehicle has been started and in Drive or Reverse, engage EPB by enabling **Electronic Parking Brake** on the infotainment system, then press the accelerator pedal slowly to a certain degree. EPB is released automatically and Ⓟ turns off with the message "EPB released" displayed.

Emergency Braking When Brake Pedal Fails

- If braking fails or is blocked, press and hold the "P" button for over 2 seconds for emergency braking.

WARNING

- For safety considerations, refrain from using EPB for braking in normal driving. It is preferred to be used when the brake pedal fails or is blocked.
- As the EPB cannot go beyond the physical limit of road adhesion, activating the emergency brake function may result in vehicle drift, sideslip, or deflection when the vehicle passes through bends or dangerous/heavy-traffic road sections, or when the vehicle is driven under severe weather conditions. Be careful to avoid any accident.

CAUTION

- For safety considerations, refrain from using the EPB for braking in normal driving. If the brake pedal fails or is blocked, use the emergency braking function while you can always keep the vehicle under control and drive normally.

EPB Trailer Mode

The EPB trailer mode is designed for the situation when EPB is automatically engaged with the ignition off. When the vehicle needs to be powered off for towing, or when it malfunctions, you

can switch on the trailer mode to exit parking with EPB. It is recommended to immediately contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider if the fault persists.

- You can activate electronic parking brake (EPB) trailer mode on the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Vehicle** → **Driving Control**.
- EPB trailer mode activation conditions (all must be met):
  - The vehicle is in Park.
  - Press the brake pedal.
  - The charging connector is not connected, and the vehicle is not being charged.

CAUTION

- When the activating conditions of EPB trailer mode are not met, a corresponding prompt message displays on the infotainment touchscreen.
- After activating the EPB trailer mode, the corresponding screen always displays on the infotainment touchscreen unless you tap to exit the EPB trailer mode.
- When the vehicle is on a slope and you need to enable the EPB trailer mode, do not release the brake pedal during the process to avoid vehicle slipping.

- EPB trailer mode exit conditions (one of them is enough):
  - Disable the EPB trailer mode on the infotainment touchscreen.
  - Press the "P" button.
  - Charging starts after the charging connector is connected.

EPB System Indicator

- When the vehicle is powered on, if the EPB is engaged, (P) is solid on on the instrument cluster.
- When the vehicle is powered off, if the EPB is engaged, (P) on the instrument cluster turns on and then turns off in several seconds.
- When the vehicle is powered on, the EPB system starts self-check. (!) turns on and then off in several seconds on the instrument cluster. If it does not, the EPB or braking system may be faulty. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for inspection immediately.

EPB Operating Sound

- EPB motor noises can be heard while the EPB is being engaged or released.
- If there is a burning smell or unusual noises after emergency braking is activated, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider immediately.

WARNING

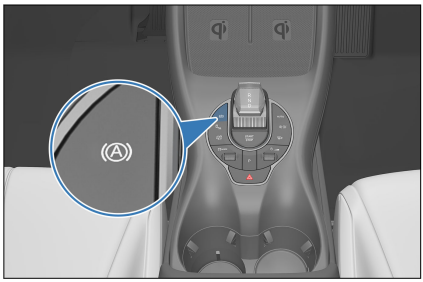
- To prevent the vehicle from moving, make sure the vehicle is in Park gear and EPB is engaged before leaving the vehicle.
- To prevent a serious accident, never allow any passenger in the vehicle to operate the EPB switch when the vehicle is running.
- When the EPB is being engaged or released, the brake pedal must be pressed to prevent the vehicle from moving, and the subsequent locking of the gearshift that occurs because the EPB cannot provide a sufficient parking force.

Automatic Vehicle Hold (AVH)

Auto Vehicle Hold (AVH): The automatic vehicle hold (AVH) is activated automatically when the moving vehicle needs to be stationary for longer periods of time, such as in traffic jams on a slope or waiting at traffic lights.

AVH standby

- When the ignition is on, press the AVH switch to enable the function. The AVH standby indicator Ⓐ is displayed on the instrument cluster.
- Press the AVH switch again to disable AVH.



AVH activated

- When the AVH standby indicator Ⓐ is solid on, press and hold the brake pedal until the vehicle stops (vehicle speed reduces to zero) to activate AVH. At this time, the vehicle is in AVH state with Ⓐ displayed on the instrument cluster.

⚠ CAUTION

- For AVH to be activated, all of the follow conditions must be met:
  - The driver's seat belt is fastened and the doors are closed.
  - Intelligent power braking system and electronic park brake (EPB) systems are normal.
- Pressing the accelerator pedal, shifting into Park, powering off the vehicle, or engaging the EPB manually can make AVH exit to the standby status.
- AVH has a memory function, which will keep the state of the last power off when it is powered on again.

AVH running

- The AVH function runs normally when the AVH function is actiavted, brake lights and the high mount brake light are on, and the AVH indicator Ⓐ is solid on on the instrument cluster.
- The AVH function exits to the standby mode after the vehicle stops for 10 minutes, with the AVH standby indicator Ⓐ lighting up and gear shifted into Park.
  - To activate AVH function, shift into Drive to enable the vehicle to move normally, and then press and hold the brake pedal until the vehicle stops (vehicle speed reduces to zero).

AVH exits

- When the AVH function runs normally, the following actions make AVH exit and shift the vehicle from Drive to Park automatically:
  - Open the driver's door.
  - Unlock the driver's seat belt.
  - The gear status is in Drive when the vehicle stops, and EPB is enabled.
  - Press the AVH switch again to disable AVH when releasing the brake pedal.

AVH suppressed

- Shifting into Reverse, AVH goes into slow-moving condition. When the vehicle is reversing (in Reverse) or travelling (shift into Drive from Reverse) at a low speed, AVH cannot be activated but stays on standby to facilitate low-speed vehicle motion.
- To exit slow-moving mode, press the AVH switch or drive at a speed above 7 mph (10 km/h). The AVH function is on standby and can be activated normally.

Driving Precautions

- Slow down when driving against strong winds.
- Drive slowly and keep the correct direction on gravel roads. To prevent tyre damage, do not drive over sharp-edged obstacles. Or it will severely damage the tyres.
- Slow down on bumpy or uneven roads or the shock would damage the tyres.
- Avoid driving through flooded areas as much as possible.
- Drive carefully on slippery roads, such as roads covered in ice, snow or sand, or surfaces such as wet ceramic tiles or epoxy resin. Avoid parking on slopes to prevent vehicle sliding.

WARNING

- The driver shall ensure the riding safety of all passengers in the vehicle, guide them to correctly use vehicle features, and prevent children and other passengers from operating control switches such as window switches in a wrong way.

REMINDER

- The battery is located in the vehicle's chassis. Make sure to avoid bumping when driving.
- Before driving, make sure that EPB is fully released and that the EPB indicator light is off.
- Do not leave the vehicle when the drive motor is running.
- Do not rest your feet on the brake pedal and accelerator pedal for a long time during driving. Otherwise, this will cause overheating, wear and waste of electric energy.
- Slow down when driving down steep slopes, and avoid braking too frequently to prevent disc overheating, which affects brake performance.
- Be careful when accelerating or braking on slippery roads. Quick acceleration or sudden braking will cause the vehicle to skid or deviate.
- Make sure no occupant sticks their head or hands outside the vehicle, specially when it comes to children.
- Large amounts of water entering the engine compartment can cause damage to the power system and electrical components.

Winter Driving Precautions

- Make sure the coolant is freeze-proof.
  - Use coolant of the same type as the one used originally. Fill up coolant into the cooling system based on ambient temperature.

- Improper coolant damages the cooling system.

- Check batteries and cables conditions.
  - The low-voltage battery is lower in cold weather, so they must be fully charged in winter.
- Avoid door frost.
  - Spray some deicing agent or glycerin in the lock hole to prevent freezing.
- Use anti-freeze washer fluid.
  - These can be found in the BYD authorised dealer or service provider and the auto parts stores.
  - The water and anti-freeze ratio must conform to manufacturer instructions.

CAUTION

- Use special washer fluid to prevent paint damage.

- Prevent ice and snow from going under the fender.
  - Steering is difficult with ice or snow accumulating under the fenders. When driving in cold weather, stop from time to time and check for snow and ice under the fenders.
- Have emergency tools or items available as prevention for difficult road conditions.
  - It is advisable to have snow chains, window scraper, bags of sand and salt, flashing signal, a shovel and connecting cables in the vehicle.

Winter Tyres

- Winter tyres provide better traction on snowy roads. The special rubber tread pattern makes the tyres less affected by low temperatures and delivers excellent braking performance to improve driving safety.

Usage tips

- It is recommended to use winter tyres in snow or ice conditions or at temperatures below 44.67°F (7 °C). When temperatures rise to above 44.67°F (7 °C), install summer or all-season tyres instead for driving safety and better performance.
- Winter tyres must be the same size, load index, and speed rating as those originally provided by BYD.
- Winter tyres must have adequate tread depth. Tyres with a tread depth less than 0.16 in. (4 mm) do not perform well in winter conditions.
- Winter or summer tyres are designed for specific acceleration conditions. Use them in the corresponding seasons to avoid poor traction or braking performance.
- Do not exceed the speed rating of winter tyres, which is relatively low.
- After installing winter tyres, inflate them to the design pressures.

Snow Chain Instructions

- Snow chains are only for emergencies or areas where they are permitted by laws, mainly to meet the needs of vehicles in winter on rain, snow and icy roads.
- Snow chains should be installed on rear wheels. Be careful when driving the vehicle installed with snow chains on snow-covered roads. Some snow chains may damage the tyres, wheels, suspension, or vehicle body. It is recommended to use thin snow chains with a thickness or diameter no greater than 10 mm to ensure adequate clearance between the tyres and other components inside the wheel well.

- Read the component assembly drawings and other instructions provided by the snow chain manufacturer carefully.
- Before purchasing and installing snow chains, consult a BYD authorised dealer or service provider where your vehicle was purchased.
- In order to minimise wear of tyres and snow chains, do not travel with snow chains on roads without snow.

REMINDER

- After installing the snow chain, the driving speed is suggested not to exceed 18 mph (30 km/h) or the speed limit specified by the snow chain manufacturer.
- Drive carefully, and pay attention to bumps, potholes, and sharp turns that can cause the vehicle to bounce.
- For vehicles with snow chains, avoid sharp turns or braking with locked wheels, and slow down the vehicle before entering a curve to avoid accidents due to loss of control.
- Install the chains symmetrically on the left and right sides and remove them immediately after driving out of snowy or muddy roads.
- If abnormal noise is heard from the snow chain, it indicates that the chain may contact vehicle components such as suspension, body or brake lines. In this case, stop the vehicle immediately for inspection.
- When installing the snow chain, park the vehicle on a flat surface away from traffic, turn on the hazard warning lights, and place a

REMINDER

warning triangle at the rear of the vehicle.

- Do not Install snow chains when the tyre pressure is insufficient
- When using snow chains, be careful not to damage the aluminium wheel rims.

Driving Assistance

Driver Assistance System

- The functions of driving assistance system are divided into two categories: driving assist, safety assist.
  - Driving assist: It includes two functions with varying levels of intelligence: adaptive cruise control (ACC) and intelligent cruise control (ICC), designed to assist the driver in driving.
  - Safety assist: It includes front, side, and rear safety assistance to support the driver in safe driving.

WARNING

- Before using the driving assistance system, the driver is required to carefully read, understand, and comply with the relevant agreements and technical documents. Learn and master the essential knowledge of using the system, including but not limited to: the user guide, general system limitations and functions' descriptions, scope of application, methods of use and precautions. During system use, strict compliance

WARNING

with the operating instructions is required to ensure safe and effective operation. BYD assumes no liability for property damage, personal injury, or other consequences caused by the driver's non-compliance with this manual, related agreements and documents, unless otherwise mandated by law.

- The driving assistance system is designed to assist the driver, not to replace their focused attention and accurate judgement. When using the system, the driver must comply with local traffic laws and regulations, always hold the steering wheel, keep alert and monitor the surrounding environment for potential hazards. Intervene or take control timely when necessary to ensure safe driving. Otherwise, it may result in accidents, property damage, or personal injury.
- The terms and expressions related to vehicle control in this manual are designed to clearly and concisely communicate key points during system usage to drivers. During system operation, the driver remains the sole operator of the vehicle. It is required to continuously monitor the vehicle, system status, and external environment and respond as necessary. In the event of system limitations or unexpected scenarios, immediate manual intervention and control are mandatory to ensure driving safety. Otherwise, it may lead to accidents, even property damage and personal injury.

WARNING

- Drivers shall comply with local laws and regulations to legally use the functions of the driving assistance system, and shall not add functions, Apps, or tools to the system for any improper or illegal acts, nor shall they illegally collect and use personal information and geographic information data. BYD shall not bear any responsibility for any illegal activities resulting from the user's misuse, improper use, or unauthorised modification of the system functions or services. BYD reserves the right to temporarily disable system functions or even terminate services provided to the user. Additionally, BYD reserves the right to retain data related to the user's illegal activities for use as evidence by authorised agencies with legal procedures.

CAUTION

- The driver assistance system is only designed to assist the driver in driving, not an automatic or unmanned driving system. The driving assistance system is designed to assist the driver, not to replace their focused attention and accurate judgement. Although the system can provide a certain level of assistance, it cannot fully address all scenarios that may arise due to traffic, road conditions, visibility, adverse weather, or other environmental changes during driving. Therefore, the driver is solely responsible for all driving decisions and must ensure

CAUTION

compliance with local traffic laws at all times.

Sensors of the Driver Assistance System

The vehicle is equipped with sensors such as MmWave radars and cameras.

Sensor cleaning and maintenance

- Ensure that all radars and cameras are clean and the front windscreen is clean and free from frost or fog. Dirt, obstructions, or attachments on the radar or camera surface, or dirt, frost, or fog on the front windscreen may affect the system working.
- When a radar or camera is blocked or dirty, the instrument or infotainment touchscreen may display a message prompt. Clean and maintain accordingly. Contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider when necessary.
- Common radar or camera occlusion or dirty scenes and corresponding treatment suggestions:
  - If the radar or camera lens housing is covered with ice or frost, it is recommended to melt it using warm water or a antifreeze-containing cleaning solution. After melting, wipe the surface dry with a clean optical cloth, cotton cloth, or velvet cloth until no visible residue remains.
  - If the radar or camera lens housing surface is adhered with dust, mud spots (including muddy water stains), bird droppings, or other contaminants, it is recommended to rinse with running water or windscreen-specific cleaning solution until the dirt and adhered contaminants soften or detach. Afterward, wipe the surface clean with a dry optical cloth, cotton cloth, or velvet cloth until no visible residue remains.
  - If the radar or camera lens housing surface has moisture or condensation, it is recommended to wipe it clean with a dry optical cloth, cotton cloth, or velvet cloth until no visible water stains remain.
  - When driving in environments with poor lighting or obstructions, such as single-sided overpasses, tunnels, deserts, grasslands, or snowy areas, it is recommended to drive the vehicle away from the current environment so as to resolve the sensoring faults due to obstructions, with no further actions required.
- Cleaning and maintenance tips:
  - When the windscreen fogs up or there is a risk of fogging, it is recommended to turn on the windscreen defrosting function to prevent fogging or frosting on the windscreen.
  - Using a neutral cleaning agent (e.g., soap water) to clean stains on the radar surface is recommended. After cleaning, rinse the radar housing surface with clean water first, and then wipe it dry with a clean lint-free cloth.
  - Do not apply films, wax, non-OEM paint, vehicle wraps, or coatings to the radar housing area, as these actions may impair radar sensing performance.
  - Do not use a cleaning brush to clean the radar or camera, as sand or debris mixed into the brush may cause scratches on the lens housing and casing.
  - Do not use hot water to remove ice or snow from the lens housing, as it may cause the lens housing to crack.

- Do not wipe the radar cover forcefully to avoid damaging the optical coating of the lens housing.
- Do not use metal or other hard objects to scrape the contaminants or ice and snow on the surface of the lens housing and casing to avoid damage.
- Avoid spraying directly on the radars and cameras when washing the vehicle body with high-pressure water.
- The mmWave radars are installed in the front and rear bumpers respectively. Therefore, keep the bumpers clean in order to avoid infuluencing radar performance. Do not paint, add body kits, or install metal or alloy (including electroplating operating) decorative parts on the bumper without permission.

System limitations

- Limitations of radar and camera include but are not limited to:
  - Radars and cameras may have detection blind spots when perceiving the surrounding environment.
  - Radars and cameras may detect falsely such as incorrectly identifying the distance or speed of objects, or detecting objects when none are present.
  - Radar and camera sensors may miss a target, such as partially identifying or failing to detect vehicles, pedestrians, animals, or other obstacles.
- Many factors can affect sensor performance, leading to false detection or missed detection. Carefully read the limitations of the driver assistance system.

WARNING

- It is strictly prohibited to use strong alkali, strong acid, ammonia-containing cleaning solvent, bleaching agent, cement cleaner, asphalt cleaning agent, glue remover, polishing agent or paint remover to clean radar and camera lens housings and casings.
- Contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider if a radar or camera needs to be replaced. Do not install or use parts not approved by BYD or make modifications not approved by BYD.
- If the front windscreen, bumper need to be replaced, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider to ensure proper disposal of radars and cameras.
- If the area where a sensor (radar or camera) is installed is damaged or collided with, causing the sensors to become misaligned or damaged, the system may fail to work. In that case, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider to check.
- After a radar or camera is replaced, calibrate in time according to this manual. An unsuccessful calibration may affect the proper operation of the system.
- Failure to observe this precaution could impair driving safety, resulting in an accident and even property loss or personal injuries.

General Limitations of the Driver Assistance System

Driver assistance features employee multi-sensor fusion algorithm. Various

factors can impair their performance. These include but are not limited to device issues (including incorrect operations), environment of use (such as weather and road conditions), and influence of vehicles around and other road users. In specific:

Device issues (including operator-related reasons)

- The mmWave radars or cameras are not yet calibrated or damaged or covered, for example, by ice, water, frost, mud, or dust.
- There are strongly reflective objects around, such as highway traffic signs, metal railings, and water reflection on the road.
- Make sure to go to a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for professional calibration and checkup of the system in any of the following situations:
  - The front camera or front windscreen has been removed.
  - Wheel alignment has been carried out.
  - Scrapes, collisions, or other impacts have led to sensor or vehicle structural error, especially sensor displacement due to deformation or damage of the bumper, front windscreen, frame, side mirror, skin (for example, fender and tailgate) or other components.
- Trailer hitches or loaded objects protrude from the vehicle.
- Interference or obstruction is caused by bike rack or other non-standard accessories installed at the rear of the vehicle.
- Obstructions is caused by excessive paint (paint thickness changes) applied or adhesive products (such as tape, stickers, and car covers) attached.
- Do not use steering wheel cover on vehicles equipped with capacitive sensors. They could give rise to malfunctions.
- Cases where system performance may be reduced include but are not limited to:
  - Excessive wear of the brake pads or braking system malfunction.
  - Improperly inflated or worn out tyres.
  - Unqualified tyres installed.
  - Snow chains installed.
  - Use of a small spare tyre or tyre repair kit.
  - The vehicle is heavily loaded.

Environment of use

- Radars may have a transient failure from detection limitations if the vehicle runs in circular ramps or tunnels or under other special conditions for an extended period. The function will be recovered after the vehicle is away from such conditions.
- Reaching or leaving a curve may delay or disturb target selection. causing the vehicle to brake late or fail to decelerate as expected.
- On roads with sharp curves (winding roads, for example) or too curvy roads, the vehicle ahead may be out of sensor detection for seconds, so ACC may accelerate.
- The system may not be able to correctly identify stationary or slow-moving objects, such as vehicles, the end of traffic, toll booths, bicycles, motorcycles, or pedestrians. This means a risk of collision and

requires constant attention on the surroundings.

- The system cannot be activated in tow, snow, mud, sand, terrain, and other special driving modes*.
- Detection may be affected or delayed in some environments. If the radar cross section of the target (a bicycle, three-wheelers, four-wheeler, or motorised bicycle, or motorcycle, for example) is too small, the system may not be able to establish its distance, resulting in either late or no response to those vehicles.
- The vehicle is running under extreme weather, such as rain, snow, fog, and smog, or on a icy and slippery curve.
- Visibility is poor due to heavy smoke, splashing water, dust, or exhaust emissions from nearby vehicles.
- Lane lines are excessively worn, blocked, or covered, have disappeared, are overlapping old ones, have been adjusted in road constructions or change rapidly.
- The vehicle is in intense light (for example, oncoming headlights or direct sunlight) or low-light conditions (for example, dawn, dusk, and nighttime).
- The vehicle experiences extreme lighting contrast, for example, at the tunnel entrance or exit.
- The environment is in extremely hot or cold.
- Weight or width limit signs not in standard size as per national regulations may be mistaken for speed limit signs.
- If a speed limit sign is unclear or distorted, inclined, reflective, partly blocked or covered, the camera may be unable to recognise the sign completely or clearly.
- The vehicle is in complex road conditions, such as steep slopes, sharp curves, continuous curves, narrow winding roads, narrow lanes, off-road roads, rough roads, roads with grooves or potholes (e.g., manholes), roads with a drop-off or cliff on one side, raised road shoulders, excessively wide lanes, construction zones (e.g., areas with traffic cones), or areas involving on-ramps, off-ramps, intersections, or toll gates.
- The vehicle is in poor road conditions, such as slippery or soft surfaces (such as water accumulation, ice, snow accumulation, muddy roads, gravel roads, or sandy roads), blurred lane markings, or damaged road signs.

Vehicles around and other road users

- Pedestrians are obscured by other objects.
- Pedestrian outlines are indistinguishable from the surroundings.
- Close-proximity non-motorised vehicles (including but not limited to two-wheelers, three-wheelers, bicycles, motorcycles, trolleys, strollers, and shopping carts), animals, and pedestrians (especially children).
- Upturned vehicles, vehicles in extremely abnormal sizes, and vehicles with irregular shapes, such as flatbed trucks, engineering vehicles, road maintenance vehicles, and vehicles carrying reinforced concrete pipes or other external cargo.
- Irregularly shaped strange obstacles nearby, such as transparent stools, chairs, tables, water barriers, and traffic cones, which are difficult for the system to identify.
- Vehicles with large areas of monotonous background colours.

- Complex traffics, including vehicles, pedestrians, cyclists, animals, or other obstacles appearing suddenly and approaching rapidly, as well as settings such as on-ramps, off-ramps, intersections, or toll stations.

WARNING

- If the sensors are displaced or damaged after scrapes or collisions (including minor impacts), do not use driver assistance features. Instead, contact an authorised BYD service centre for inspection and servicing.
- For safety considerations, do not use driver assistance features in bad weather or in poor lighting conditions.
- For safety considerations, do not deliberately test driver assistance features, for example, by waiting for system reaction to emergencies without manual intervention.
- Read carefully all instructions to avoid feature deactivation or danger incurred by incorrect operations. For example, the acceleration request overrides emergency braking if the accelerator paddle is depressed with AEB on.
- Because of its limitations, the driver assistance system may give improper warnings or intervention while monitoring the surroundings. It may also raise false alarms as a result of operation misinterpretation. Stay alert.
- Because the system cannot accurately detect and react to emergency in the surroundings, you must be always ready to

WARNING

intervene or take control of the vehicle (by deceleration, braking, steering or so) whenever necessary. Failure to observe precautions above could result in an accident or personal injuries.

Driving Assist

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

- Adaptive cruise control (ACC), an extension of traditional cruise control, uses sensors on a front mmWave radar or front camera to detect the relative distance and speed of the vehicle ahead, so as to maintain the set cruise speed or time-base following distance. The vehicle travels at the target cruise speed when the front space is clear, and adjusts speed according to the set time-based following distance once a front vehicle is detected.

CAUTION

- ACC is enabled by default and cannot be manually disabled. The driver can activate ACC using the buttons on the steering wheel. See "ACC Activation Methods" for details.
- ACC only serves to assist in cruise control, and your active steering wheel manipulation remains necessary for ensuring the correct travelling direction of the vehicle.

Function status

- With the ACC function enabled: If the ACC activation conditions are met, the driver can activate the ACC function by the steering wheel button.Otherwise, the man-machine interface will prompt that the function is unavailable if

the driver tries to activate the ACC function.

- ACC activated: The system is operational. It maintains the target speed or automatically adjusts the distance from the vehicle ahead. It will be overridden to respond to driver's acceleration action if the accelerator pedal is pressed with the ACC activated, and will continue when the pedal is released.
- ACC failure: At this time, the system is not available. If the driver tries to activate the ACC function, the instrument cluster will prompt that the function is unavailable.

Function Status	Indicator	Display Status	Meaning
With the ACC function enabled		Indicator on	ACC has been turned on but not activated yet in the current ignition cycle.
With the ACC function enabled		Indicator on	ACC has been turned on, can be activated, and had already been activated in the current ignition cycle. The cruise speed before last ACC deactivation is displayed in the indicator icon.
ACC activated		Indicator on	ACC is active. The cruise speed set is displayed in the indicator icon.
ACC failure		Indicator on	ACC is not available when it is faulty.

Activation conditions

- EPB is not engaged.
- The vehicle is in Drive.
- The vehicle does not slide backwards.
- The boot, bonnet, and all doors are closed.
- The driver seat belt is fastened.
- The electronic stability control (ESC) system is on.
- The vehicle speed is not greater than 93 mph (150 km/h).
- If the vehicle is stationary (zero speed), stepping on the brake pedal or engaging EPB activates ACC.
- If the vehicle is travelling (speed greater than 0), ACC can be activated when the brake pedal is not stepped on.
- There is no vehicle network communication failure prompt on the instrument cluster.
- The AEB function is not activated.

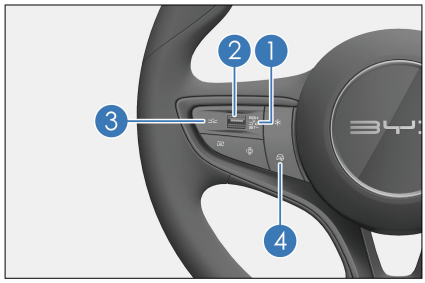
CAUTION

- ACC cannot be activated with ESC off.
- The ACC is suitable for motorways and roads in good conditions, rather than complex urban or meandering roads.

Activation methods

- Within an ignition cycle, the first ACC activation can only be done using

button ④, and ACC can later be activated also by pushing up button ②.



- Press Button ④ to activate the feature, the system set to cruise at the current speed. If it is below 30 km/h, the target cruise speed is set to 30 km/h. If is activated by pushing up button ②, the target cruise speed is set to the speed before last deactivation.

WARNING

- The system cannot automatically adjust speed to road and driving conditions. You are supposed to set target speed as per local traffic laws and regulations and respond to changes in a timely manner to ensure driving safety.

Setting the target cruise speed

- To set the speed adjustment mode, go to infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **ADAS** → **Driving Assist**.
- When the speed adjustment mode is set to short press ±5 / long press ±1.
  - When ACC is activated, you can set the target speed between 19-93 mph (30-150 km/h) by moving ② up or down. Briefly pushing the button ② up/down increases/decreases the target cruise speed by 5 km/h each time, whereas holding it up/down increases/decreases the speed by 1 km/h successively.
- When the speed adjustment mode is set to short press ±1 / long press ±5.
  - When ACC is activated, you can set the target speed between 19-93 mph (30-150 km/h) by moving ② up or down. Briefly pushing the button ② up/down increases/decreases the target cruise speed by 1 km/h each time, whereas holding it up/down increases/decreases the speed by 5 km/h successively.

WARNING

- ACC cannot immediately slow down the vehicle to the desired speed. Never be over-reliant on the system.
- You are supposed to always be alert to all possible dangers around and intervene or control the vehicle whenever necessary, for example, by slowing down, braking, or steering away as appropriate. Failure to observe this precaution could impair driving safety, resulting in an accident and even property loss or personal injuries.

Setting following distance

- Buttons ① and ③ increases and decreases the time-based following distance. At all levels, the faster the vehicle, the greater the distance.
- ACC increases or decreases the time-based following distance from level 1 to 4 in sequence, and the default setting is level 3.

Cruise control

- When no front vehicle obstructing your vehicle travel is detected, ACC helps maintain the set speed.

Following

- When a front vehicle obstructing your vehicle travel is detected, ACC helps maintain a safe distance to follow and lets the vehicle speed up, slow down, brake, and start accordingly.
- On the instrument cluster, the followed vehicle in front is highlighted with blue colour. The following distance is fixed but varies with vehicle speed and the chosen following distance level. (See "Setting following distance".)
- When active, ACC helps adjust the following speed and target when the target cuts out or another vehicle cuts in and switches to cruise control (without distance control) if no new following target appears.

Follow-to-stop/start

- Under normal driving conditions, ACC enables your vehicle to follow the vehicle ahead to start or stop:
  - ACC automatically accelerates your vehicle away from a standstill if the vehicle ahead pulls away within a short period of time.
  - If your vehicle has stopped for a longer period of time, resume motion by pressing the accelerator pedal or pushing up the ② ACC cruise button as prompted.
  - ACC will be canceled and EPB engaged after the ACC system holds your vehicle at a standstill for too long. In that case, you will have to disengage EPB and press the brake pedal in order to reactivate ACC.

ACC accelerates the vehicle

- The acceleration rate of the ACC is linked to the selected driving mode.
  - In Sport Mode, the vehicle provides faster acceleration.
  - In Normal Mode, the vehicle provides moderate acceleration.
  - In Economic Mode, the vehicle provides smooth acceleration.

WARNING

- Be a safe and responsible driver. Set the target speed and following distance according to local road regulations and conditions and adjust in a timely manner to changes.
- ACC is unable to deal with oncoming traffics.
- ACC may not correctly recognise the target if the front vehicle or pedestrian is too close.
- On curves, the vehicle may follow a wrong target, leading to unintended travelling speed or direction. You must stay focus and take control of the vehicle in a timely and correct manner whenever noticing such situations.
- To prevent collisions, never be over-reliant on ACC adjustment of speed and following distance to keep a correct and safe distance from the front vehicle. You are responsible for determining and keeping the safe following distance.
- You are supposed to always be alert to all possible dangers around and intervene or control the vehicle whenever necessary, for example, by slowing down, braking, or steering away as appropriate. Failure to observe this precaution could impair driving safety, resulting in an accident and even property loss or personal injuries.

Adjusting speed with ACC active

- The fuction is disabled by default and can be enabled in the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **ADAS** → **Driving Assist** → **Adjust Cruise Speed by Accelerator**.
- When ACC is activated, you can accelerate manually by pressing the accelerator pedal, the driver assistance system does not brake during this process.
- Pressing the accelerator pedal to increase current speed rapidly, and releasing the pedal to raise the target cruise speed.
- If the accelerator pedal is depressed until the real-time vehicle speed exceeds the target cruise speed, the target cruise speed will be reset to the real-time speed when the pedal is released.
  - If the target cruise speed is over 50 mph (80 km/h), it will not be updated when the accelerator pedal is released after acceleration.
  - If the target cruise speed is below 50 mph (80 km/h) and the real-time speed is over 50 mph (80 km/h) after acceleration, the cruise speed is set to 50 mph (80 km/h) when the accelerator pedal is released.
  - If the target cruise speed is below 50 mph (80 km/h), and the real-time speed is below 50 mph (80 km/h) after acceleration, it will be updated to the real-time speed when the accelerator pedal is released,.
- If the accelerator pedal is depressed and lever ② is pushed downward at the same time, the current speed will be set as the new target cruise speed.

Exiting ACC

- When ICC is activated and the vehicle is moving, you can deactivate the system by pressing button ④ or depressing the brake pedal. When ICC is deactivated, the system can only be exited by depressing the button ④.
- When ICC is active and the vehicle is moving, you can deactivate the system by depressing the brake pedal.

Inside overtaking prevention (also applicable for ICC)

- The function of inside overtaking prevention is only effective when the ICC function is activated and the driving speed of the vehicle reaches more than about 55 mph (90 km/h).
- It is off by default. To switch it on, go to infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **ADAS** → **Driving Assist** → **Inside Overtaking Prevention**.
- When the function switch is turned on, when the vehicle is driving in the slow lane and the speed of the vehicle in the adjacent fast lane is slower than that of the vehicle, the system will automatically control the vehicle to reduce the speed and try to avoid overtaking the vehicle in the adjacent fast lane.

Speed adjustment on curve (also applicable for ICC)

- This feature works only with ACC active.
- To enable or disable the function, go to infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist** → **Speed Adjustment on Curve**. The function is disable by default.
- When ACC is active, the system enables the vehicle to decelerate to a proper speed before entering a bend based on the bend's radius, thereby improve driving safety and comfort.

System limitations

- Exterior ACC sensors

- The mmWave radar and camera are installed in the front of the vehicle. Blockage of their field of view could interfere the intended functionality. In particular, if the sensor is covered by snow completely, ACC deactivates itself and informs of this on the instrument cluster. System functionality will recover after blockage is removed and the vehicle is restarted or runs on normal roads for a while.
- Detection may be affected or delayed in some environments. If the radar cross section of the target (a bicycle, three-wheelers, four-wheeler, or motorised bicycle, or motorcycle, for example) is too small, the system may not be able to establish its distance, resulting in either late or no response to those vehicles.
- The front mmWave radar may have a transient failure from detection limitations if the vehicle runs in circular ramps or tunnels or under other special conditions for an extended period. The function will be recovered after the vehicle is away from such conditions.
- The mmWave radar may malfunction or misidentify targets due to interference from other mmWave radars.
- Metal objects, such as rail or metal plates used in road construction, may interfere with front mmWave radars, making it malfunction.
- Detection may be affected or delayed by noises or electromagnetic waves.
- Performance of front mmWave radar sensors and cameras may be affected by vibration or collision. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.

- Reaching or leaving a curve may delay or disturb target selection. causing the ACC vehicle to brake late or fail to decelerate as expected.
- On roads with sharp curves, such as winding roads, the vehicle ahead may be out of ACC sensor detection for seconds, so ACC may accelerate.

WARNING

- ACC cannot deal with sharp, consecutive, and other complex curves, so you need to stay aware of road conditions ahead and slow down or brake in a timely manner if necessary.

- Traffic flow and surroundings must be heeded for setting and adjusting the following distance. Even with ACC properly set, it remains essential to ensure the vehicle can be brought to a full stop at any time.
- The ACC system may not be able to correctly identify stationary or slow-moving objects, such as vehicles, the end of traffic, toll booths, bicycles, motorcycles, or pedestrians. This means a risk of collision and requires constant attention on the surroundings.
- The ACC system is capable of limited braking instead of emergency braking.

WARNING

- ACC is not a collision warning or avoidance system and therefore cannot replace collision prevention warning, collision prevention brake, or other active safety assist features, which we strongly advise you to keep switched on.
- ACC cannot react to poles, bollards, and other obstacles, so you need to stay aware of road

WARNING

conditions ahead and slow down or brake in a timely manner if necessary.

- Never be over-reliant on ACC for full deceleration and collision prevention. You need to stay aware of road conditions ahead and brake in a timely manner if necessary.
- The vehicle may not be able to detour around front targets that risk colliding with it, especially when the target is stationary or when the vehicle is excessive.
- You are supposed to always be alert to all possible dangers around and intervene or control the vehicle whenever necessary, for example, by slowing down, braking, or steering away as appropriate. Failure to observe this precaution could impair driving safety, resulting in an accident and even property loss or personal injuries.

- ACC cannot be activated in special driving modes* like tow/snow/mud/sand/terrain.
- Situations where ACC and related features may work improperly or deactivate themselves include but are not limited to:
  - Vehicle issues (including but not limited to incorrect operations):
    - Vehicle speed is greater than 96 mph (155 km/h).
    - Any door, the bonnet, or the tailgate is open or faulty.
    - Tyre pressure is abnormal.
    - Airbags are abnormal.
    - The vehicle is in any of the following states: not in Drive, in the process of braking, hill descent system/hill hold system/traction control system activated, colliding with or being collided by another vehicle, ignition off.
    - The vehicle's chassis, braking system, traction control system, or electronic stability system malfunctions or is in need of servicing.
    - The driver's seat belt is not fastened.
    - The driver assistance system malfunctions or is in need of servicing.
  - Environment factors (including but not limited to weather, visibility, road conditions):
    - Low visibility settings such as nighttime, rainy, snowy, or foggy days, dusty environments, lack of lighting, low-light conditions, backlighting, and glare.
    - Road openings, intersections, narrow roads, and steep slopes.
    - Mountain roads and rural roads.
    - Waterlogged, icy, and snow-covered sections.
    - Sharp curves, serpentine curves, switchback roads, and other high-curvature turns.
    - Unpaved roads such as muddy roads, gravel roads, and off-road trails.
    - Presence of kerbs and other low-profile, static, or nearby obstacles.
  - Vehicles around and other road users (including but not limited to):
    - Congested intersections.

- Pedestrians and vehicles weaving through the intersection.
- Sudden appearance of pedestrians, cyclists, and animals previously in the blind spot.
- Sudden braking of the vehicle ahead.
- Adjacent large vehicle merging into the vehicle's lane.
- Pedestrians or other vehicles cutting in line, jaywalking or road-hogging, merging in from a sharp angle, or travelling in the wrong way.
- Stationary vehicles, upturned vehicles, and vehicles with irregular shapes, such as flatbed trucks, engineering vehicles, road maintenance vehicles, and vehicles carrying reinforced concrete pipes or other external cargo.
- Front vehicle or adjacent front vehicle with any door open or things falling off.

- Other issues
  - Include but are not limited to other situations listed under general system limitations.

WARNING

- ACC is only a driver assistance feature, and cautions here include only common situations affecting its functionality. Factors associated with system performance are more than these. You are fully responsible for your driving safety and must always be aware of surroundings.
- Use ACC based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.

CAUTION

- ACC cannot be activated with ESC off.
- The ACC is suitable for motorways and roads in good conditions, rather than complex urban or meandering roads.
- It is the driver's responsibility to keep distance from the vehicle ahead. Set a time-based following distance compliant with the minimum requirement for the local driving environment.
- Pressing the accelerator or brake pedal while ACC is active allows you to take over the vehicle. Therefore, take caution to keep a safe distance from the vehicle ahead.
- ACC may have no or slow responses to a vehicle ahead that stops suddenly, resulting in a risk of late braking.
- In some cases, such as when the vehicle ahead is going too slow, when lane change is too fast, or when the safe distance from the vehicle ahead is too short, there is no adequate time for the system to decrease the relative speed. That is, the system may not give timely warnings in every case, which necessitates your prompt responses.
- If ACC is activated with the vehicle stationary, the system identifies any stationary obstacle ahead and keeps the vehicle still to ensure a safe startup and prevent collision. However, this function cannot identify all the obstacles, so the driver must be alert to the front obstacles or other traffic participants.

CAUTION

- ACC may brake the vehicle if it is too close to the adjacent lane or if the adjacent vehicle is too close too your lane.
- Vehicles coming into your ACC vehicle's route and within its camera detection range will be identified and reacted to as targets, which may lead to hard or late braking.
- Keep control of the vehicle if ACC cannot target the vehicle ahead (no highlighted target on the instrument cluster).
- In rare cases, while the vehicle stops as does the vehicle ahead, the system may fail to recognise the rear of the vehicle ahead, such as the rear axle of a truck with a higher chassis or vehicle bumper. This means a suitable following distance cannot be kept and you must stay alert and ready to brake at any time.
- Modifying the vehicle structure, such as lowering the chassis, may affect the ACC system.
- Do not use ACC when visibility is poor, or when driving on slopes, winding roads, or wet roads (covered in ice/snow or flooded).
- Because speed limit recognition could be misled by road conditions, always monitor the speed limit of the current road to ensure compliance with traffic laws.
- Make sure to go to a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for professional calibration and checkup of the front camera in any of the following situations:

CAUTION

- The front camera or front windscreen has been removed.
- Wheel alignment has been carried out.
- The vehicle has experienced a collision.
- Impaired ACC performance is noticed or the instrument cluster indicates an system error.

Intelligent Cruise Control (ICC)

- Intelligent Cruise Control (ICC) assists the driver in keeping the vehicle within the current lane at speeds between approximately 0 and 93 mph (0-150 km/h). It is primarily intended for use on roads with clear lane markings and in good driving conditions. When using ICC, the driver must control the driving route. The driver must keep both hands on the steering wheel while the function is active and be ready to take manual control whenever necessary.
- ICC uses sensors such as radars and cameras to monitor the road ahead. Based on the detected environment, it assists the driver in controlling the steering and speed, building upon ACC functionality to keep the vehicle in its current lane.
- ICC only assists in keeping the vehicle within the current lane; it does not provide route guidance. When using ICC, the driver must always keep both hands on the steering wheel, take control when route adjustments are required, and pay attention to instrument cluster and audio alerts. The driver must be prepared to take immediate corrective action to ensure safe driving. If the driver's hands are removed from the steering wheel for

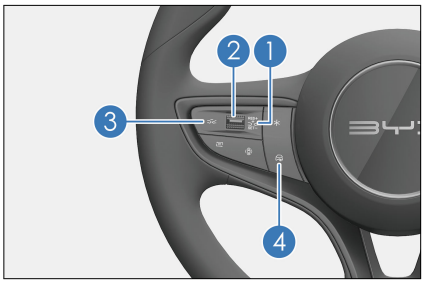
a certain time, a driver disengagement alert will be triggered.

ICC indicators

Indicator	Display Status	Meaning
	Indicator on	ICC available but not activated
	Indicator on	ICC activated and operating
	Indicator on	ICC fault, unavailable

Activate ICC

- When the instrument displays , ICC is available for activation.
- Enable or disable the function on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping  →**ADAS**→**Driving Assist**. When the vehicle is started, the system defaults to previous settings.
- Press button ④ to activate ICC. If the activation conditions are not met (for example, no lane markings are detected), ACC will be activated first. Once the conditions are met, ICC will switch on automatically.



- When ICC is successfully activated, the instrument displays . The target vehicle is displayed on the .

Intelligent Cruise Control (ICC)

- The ICC system enhances the driver's ability to control the vehicle by maintaining it within the center of the current lane. During operation, it supports all ACC functions, including constant speed cruise and following cruise. It enables adjustment of target speed, following time interval, and all other ACC operations.

WARNING

- Be a safe and responsible driver. Set the target speed and following distance according to local road regulations and conditions and adjust in a timely manner to changes.
- ICC cannot detect all potential hazards so the driver must stay aware of road conditions ahead and slow down or brake in a timely manner if necessary. Always keep both hands on the steering wheel and remain aware of the surroundings, ready to take prompt control of the vehicle and take corrective measures.
- Do not over-rely on ICC to keep the vehicle in the lane. In certain situations, such as curves, the vehicle may drift towards or across lane markings. The driver is responsible for maintaining the correct lane position.

WARNING

- The driver is supposed to always be alert to all possible dangers around and take control of the vehicle whenever necessary to ensure safe driving.

Exiting ICC

- If the vehicle is not at rest, the function can be exited by pressing button ④ or by manually stepping on the brake pedal; if the vehicle is at rest, the function can only be exited by pressing button ④.

Driver's motion departure warning

- During ICC activation, the driver's continuous hands off the steering wheel will trigger the driver's motion off reminder.
- After the driver's movement is triggered from the three-level reminder, the vehicle will actively exit the ICC, slow down to brake in the lane, and light up the hazard warning lights.
- The following actions can interrupt the active parking behavior of this lane.
  - Turn off the double flash or turn on the left and right turn signals.
  - Step on the accelerator pedal and turns the steering wheel at the same time.
  - Canceling ICC using the steering wheel control button.
  - The gear is switched to "P" gear.
- In a single power-on cycle, the ICC function will be disabled after three times of triggering the driver motion out of the level 3 alarm, and the function can be activated normally after the power-up and power-down again.

WARNING

- The vehicle may not stabilize immediately upon ICC activation. The driver must keep both hands on the steering wheel, stay aware of driving conditions, and be ready to take control at any time.
- Ensure surrounding conditions are safe before activating ICC. Avoid over-reliance on the system.
- The driver is supposed to always be alert to all possible dangers around and take control of the vehicle whenever necessary to ensure safe driving.
- ICC can be affected by weather conditions, lighting, and lane marking visibility. Performance degrades significantly in situations such as backlight, front light, glare, bright light, snow covered roads, and roads with heavily worn lane markings.
- Do not use the ICC system on winding roads with sharp turns, icy and slippery bends, or under weather conditions, such as dense fog, heavy rain and heavy snow, liable to hinder the sensing operation of front view camera.

CAUTION

- Activate ICC only after the vehicle is stable (steering wheel centered, vehicle aligned in lane, no sharp turns).
- ICC activation may fail when driving through intersections. Try activating the system after passing the intersection and entering a stable lane.

Intelligent Speed Limit Control (ISLC)

Function overview

- When traffic sign recognition system detects that the speed limit value is inconsistent with the ACC target cruise speed set by the user, the system will prompt the user whether to adjust the target cruising speed to comply with the speed limit. When the user presses the SET- or RES + button, the target cruise speed will be adjusted to the speed limit value.
- When the system detects roundabouts, intersections, or other road signs, it will prompt the driver to adjust the ACC (Adaptive Cruise Control) target cruising speed.
- When SLF system detects that the ahead speed limit value is inconsistent with the current target cruise speed set by the user, the system will prompt the user whether to adjust the target cruising speed to comply with the ahead speed limit. When the user presses the SET- or RES + button, the target cruise speed will be adjusted to the ahead speed limit value.
- The system's operating speed range is 19-93 mph (30-150 km/h).

Function Settings

- ISLC setting: To enable or disable intelligent speed limit control, go to infotainment touchscreenEnable → ⚙ → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist** → **Intelligent Speed Limit Control**.
  - ISLC is disabled by default.
  - When the vehicle is started, the system defaults to previous settings.
  - When TSR is disabled, ISLC also ceases to function.
  - When TSR is enabled, ISLC can be enabled or disabled depending on your needs.

⚠ CAUTION

- ISLC integrates ACC and TSR. Therefore, the function precautions of ACC and TSR must be followed, and the system limitations need to be fully understood and considered when using ISLC.

Forward Safety Assist

Forward Collision Warning (FCW)

- Forward Collision Warning (FCW) uses the front mmWave radar and the camera to detect vehicles pedestrians and cyclists ahead. When detecting a risk of collision, the system alerts the driver audibly and visually to take measures and avoid the collision risk.

Forward Collision Warning (FCW)

- Safe distance warning:
  - When the vehicle runs at a speed of about 41-93 mph (65-150km/h), the system continuously monitors the forward driving environment in real-time. If following the vehicle ahead closely in a long-time is detected, the system issues a safe distance warning to prompt the driver that the following distance is too close.
  - The indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, and a prompt is displayed to alert the driver to maintain a safe distance.
- Pre-warning:
  - When the vehicle runs at a speed of about 10-93mph (15-150 km/h), the system will give a pre-alarm when it detects a collision risk between the vehicle and the target in front. The driver needs to promptly take appropriate actions to ensure safe following distance.

- The system gives a pre-warning visually and audibly. The indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, a prompt is displayed, and the buzzer alarms.

- Emergency warning:
  - If the vehicle runs at a speed of about 10-93mph (15-150 km/h) and the driver does not respond to the pre-warning, the system will issue an emergency warning through auditory, visual, and tactile alerts. The driver needs to promptly take appropriate actions to ensure safe following distance.
  - The indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, the buzzer alarms, a prompt is displayed, and there is a short braking warning.

WARNING

- FCW is a driver assistance feature. Its activation may be afffected by factors such as vehicle speed, sensor accuracy, obstacle type, distance to the obstacle, driving environment, and system response delay, which may result in untimely warnings, missed alerts, or false alarms. FCW can not replace the driver's judgement and operation.

Function settings

- Enable or disable FCW on the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**.
- The settings are defined as follows:
  - Off: FCW is disenabled.
  - Late: FCW is enabled and issues a late warning.
  - Moderate: FCW is enabled and issues a moderate warning.
  - Early: FCW is enabled and issues a early warning.

REMINDER

- The default setting is moderate.
- If the feature was not disabled during the last trip, the system retains the user's selected sensitivity setting. If the feature was disabled during the last trip, the system resets the sensitivity to the default value "Moderate" upon vehicle power-up.

System limitations

- FCW may be affected or give no response in the following cases, including but not limited to:
  - Vehicles, pedestrians, or cyclists that approach from the front.
  - Vehicles, pedestrians, or cyclists that cut obliquely into the vehicle's path.
  - Vehicles, pedestrians, or cyclists in adjacent lanes.
  - Animals.
  - Non-standard vehicles, such as water trucks, box trucks, and construction vehicles.
- FCW may be affected or give no response in the following cases, including but not limited to:
  - Poor weather conditions such as rain, snow, or fog.
  - Poor visibility conditions such as nighttime, glare, or direct sunlight.
  - Dirty, hazy, damaged or blocked sensor.
  - The bonnet or boot is not closed properly or opened during driving.

- The driver's seat belt is not fastened or it is unfastened when the vehicle is moving.
- The driver presses the brake pedal.
- The driver presses the accelerator pedal hard.
- The drivers frequently switches between the accelerator and brake pedals.
- The ESC function is disabled or ESC fault indicator is on.
- Modifications to the vehicle, such as excessive paint thickness from repainting, application of films, adhesive tape, or decorative elements, may interfere with the performance of cameras or mmWave radars.
- The system is in the process of starting (for example, vehicle is just powered on or restarting).
- Scenarios listed under general system limitations.
- The system is malfunctioning or requires servicing.

- In complex traffic situations, FCW may not be able to respond correctly to the following situations, including but not limited to:
  - Pedestrians or vehicles move too quickly into the sensor's detection range.
  - Pedestrians are obscured by other objects.
  - Pedestrian outlines indistinguishable from the surroundings.
  - Pedestrians are not detected, due to, for example, coverage by special clothing or other materials.
  - The vehicle is on a sharp curve.
  - Detection may be affected or delayed in some environments. If the radar reflective cross section of the target (a bicycle, three-wheelers, four-wheelers, pedestrian, electric bicycles, motorcycle, or non-standard vehicles, for example) is too small, the system may not be able to establish its distance to the target ahead, resulting in either late or no response to the target.
  - The mmWave radars may malfunction or misidentify objects due to interference from other mmWave radars.
  - Detection may also be affected or delayed by noise or electromagnetic interference.
- Forward collision warning may trigger unnecessary warning for water stains on the ground, road shadows, manhole covers, iron plates or road signs.
- If the vehicle runs for a long time in special road conditions such as circular parking lot and tunnel, the front millimeter wave radar may have temporary functional failure due to the limitation of detection characteristics, and the function will be automatically restored after leaving the current special road.

WARNING

- Make sure to drive safely and observe surrounding traffic conditions. FCW is not a substitute for the driver's normal judgement and operation.
- If FCW gives an alarm, the driver must brake based on traffic conditions to decrease vehicle speed or steer away from obstacles.

WARNING

- If the vehicle travels too close to the vehicle ahead for too long, a safety distance warning will be given. If the vehicle ahead brakes suddenly, collision may be unavoidable.
- As the pedestrian protection function cannot overcome the restrictions of some physical conditions, it may not fully work within the speed range specified by the system. Therefore, the responsibility to use brakes timely and effectively always lies in the driver. Whether a warning is issued in pedestrian protection scenarios depends on the actual situation.
- In pedestrian protection scenarios, the system cannot guarantee the complete prevention of accidents and severe injuries.
- The pedestrian protection function may trigger unwanted alarms in some complex situations, for example, on curved main roads.
- There may also be unnecessary alarm intervention in case of malfunctions in the pedestrian protection system, such as angular misalignment of the radar/multi-function video controller.
- Do not try to test FCW with carton, iron plate, dummy and other objects. The system may not work properly and thus result in accidents.
- It is recommended to go to a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for professional

WARNING

calibration of the mmWave radars in case of any of the following situations:

- Dismantle the mmWave radar or front camera.
- Toe-in or rear camber has been adjusted during wheel alignment.
- The vehicle experienced a collision.
- ACC system performance has degraded or become abnormal.

- Use FCW based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.

REMINDER

- FCW cannot guarantee a warning in all cases. In complex traffic, the system cannot always clearly identify all the vehicles, pedestrians or cyclists.
- In this case, the instrument cluster display shows corresponding information (dirty surface or foreign matter covering causes blindness of the sensor); then, foreign matters on the sensor surface shall be removed as required. When the sensor is dirty or covered by foreign matter, the forward collision warning is disabled. After clearing, the forward collision warning is normal.

Automatic Emergency Braking (AEB)

- AEB uses the front mmWave radar or the camera to detect vehicles, pedestrians and cyclists ahead. When detecting a risk of serious collision, the system automatically applies

braking pressure to assist in collision avoidance or impact reduction.

- When the vehicle runs at a speed of about 3-93 mph(4-150 km/h), AEB continuously monitors the forward driving environment in real-time. When detecting a risk of collision with vehicles, pedestrians or cyclists ahead, the system automatically applies braking pressure to decelerate the vehicle.
- During emergency braking, the instrument cluster displays a braking indicator, a prompt message with animation and text is shown, and an audible alarm is triggered simultaneously.

WARNING

- AEB is a driver assistance feature not designed to prevent collisions but rather to assist the driver in avoiding or mitigating collisions.
- Braking is influenced by multiple variables, including the vehicle's speed, sensor accuracy, object type, spatial relationship to the target, system response time, braking system efficiency, and tyre status. Braking may occur incorrectly if the system misidentifies objects. AEB can not replace the driver's judgement and operation.

Function settings

- Enable or disable the AEB on the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**.

WARNING

- It is strongly recommended that not to disable the AEB function. If it is disabled, the vehicle will

WARNING

be unable to assist the driver in reducing vehicle speed or avoiding/mitigating collisions.

REMINDER

- AEB is enabled by default.
- Disabling the AEB is only effective for the current trip. The system will be enabled automatically upon vehicle restart.

System limitations

- AEB is only activated when the vehicle speed exceeds 2.5 mph (4 km/h). This feature is designed to reduce the risk of collision but does not guarantee collision avoidance at all speeds. Please note that the system does not guarantee that it can be triggered accurately under every working condition. Please drive carefully.
- Targets that may not be responded include, but are not limited to:
  - Vehicles, pedestrians, or cyclists that approach from the front.
  - Vehicles, pedestrians, or cyclists that cut obliquely into the vehicle's path.
  - Vehicles, pedestrians, or cyclists in adjacent lanes.
  - Animals.
  - Non-standard vehicles, such as water trucks, box trucks, and construction vehicles.
- AEB may be affected or inoperative under the following conditions, including but not limited to:
  - Poor weather conditions such as rain, snow, or fog.

- Poor visibility conditions such as nighttime, glare, or direct sunlight.
- Poor road conditions such as pits, bumps, slippery surfaces, or steep slopes.
- Dirty, hazy, damaged or blocked sensor.
- The front bonnet or boot is not properly closed or is opened while driving.
- The driver is not wearing a seat belt or has unbuckled it.
- The driver presses the accelerator pedal hard.
- The drivers frequently switches between the accelerator and brake pedals.
- The ESC function is disabled or ESC fault indicator is on.
- Modifications to the vehicle, such as excessive paint thickness from repainting, application of films, adhesive tape, or decorative elements, may interfere with the performance of cameras or mmWave radars.
- The system is in the process of starting, for example when vehicle is just powered on or restarting.
- Scenarios listed under general system limitations.
- The system is malfunctioning or requires servicing.

- In complex traffic situations, AEB may not be able to respond correctly to the following situations, including but not limited to:
  - Pedestrians or vehicles move too quickly into the sensor's detection range.
  - Pedestrians are obscured by other objects.
  - Pedestrian outlines are indistinguishable from the surroundings.
  - Pedestrians are not detected, due to, for example, coverage by special clothing or other materials.
  - The vehicle is on a sharp curve.
  - Detection may be affected or delayed in some environments. If the radar reflective cross section of the target (a bicycle, three-wheelers, four-wheelers, pedestrian, electric bicycles, motorcycle, or non-standard vehicles, for example) is too small, the system may not be able to establish its distance to the target ahead, resulting in either late or no response to the target.
  - The mmWave radar may malfunction or misidentify targets due to interference from other mmWave radars.
  - Detection may be affected or delayed by noises or electromagnetic waves.
- System performance may be reduced in the following cases, including but not limited to:
  - Strong front bumper impact from accidents or other causes.
  - Excessive wear of the brake pads or braking system malfunction.
  - Improperly inflated or worn out tyres.
  - Unqualified tyres installed.
  - Snow chains installed.
  - Use of a small spare tyre or tyre repair kit.
  - The vehicle is heavily loaded.
  - The vehicle is in break-in period.
- AEB may trigger unnecessary braking for water stains on the ground, human

silhouettes, road shadows, manhole covers, iron plates or road signs.

- If the vehicle runs for a long time in special road conditions such as circular parking lot and tunnel, the front millimeter wave radar may have temporary functional failure due to the limitation of detection characteristics, and the function will be automatically restored after leaving the current special road.
- AEB cannot be activated if special driving modes* such as trailer/ snow/mud/sand/terrain are enabled.
- To avoid unnecessary repeated braking, AEB will not be triggered again within tens of seconds after the initial activation.

WARNING

- Be sure to drive safely and keep eyes on the surrounding traffic conditions. Under no circumstances shall AEB be used as a substitute for the driver's judgement and operation.
- As the pedestrian protection function cannot overcome the restrictions of some physical conditions, it may not fully work within the speed range specified by the system. Therefore, the responsibility to use brakes timely and effectively always lies in the driver. Whether a braking is issued in pedestrian protection scenarios depends on the actual situation.
- In pedestrian protection scenarios, the system cannot guarantee the complete prevention of accidents and severe injuries.
- The pedestrian protection function may trigger unwanted braking in some complex situations, for example, on curved main roads.
- There may also be unnecessary braking intervention in case of malfunctions in the pedestrian protection system, such as angular misalignment of the radar/multi-function video controller.
- Do not attempt to test the PEB system on your own using objects such as carton, iron plate, dummy, etc. The system may not work properly and thus result in accidents.
- It is recommended to go to a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for professional calibration of the mmWave radars in case of any of the following situations:
  - Dismantle the mmWave radar or front camera.
  - Toe-in or rear camber has been adjusted during wheel alignment.
  - The vehicle has experienced a collision.
  - ACC system performance has degraded or become abnormal.
- Use AEB based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.

REMINDER

- The system will not trigger AEB when the driver is aware of an emergency warning but turns the steering wheel, accelerates or brakes.

REMINDER

- AEB cannot guarantee a braking in all cases. In complex traffic, the system cannot always clearly identify all the vehicles, pedestrians or cyclists.
- In this case, the instrument cluster display shows corresponding information (dirty surface or foreign matter covering causes blindness of the sensor); then, foreign matters on the sensor surface shall be removed as required. IF AEB is off because that sensor is dirty or covered with foreign objects, clear the sensor to make it function normally.

Front Cross Traffic Alert (FCTA)

- When the vehicle is travelling at around 6-12 mph(10–20 km/h), the front cross traffic alert (FCTA) system continuously monitor the environment ahead through sensors such as mmWave radars or cameras on both sides of the front bumper. If a potential collision with a crossing vehicle, pedestrian, or cyclist is detected, the system issues a warning to alert the driver.
- During a warning event, the system alerts the driver via an audible beep from the buzzer and a visual prompt on the instrument cluster, rendered according to the radar detection side.

Function settings

- Enable or disable the FCTA on the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**.

REMINDER

- This function is disabled as delivered from the factory.
- When the vehicle is started, the system defaults to previous settings.

System limitations

- FCTA is a driver assistance system and may not function under all traffic, weather, visibility, road, or vehicle conditions.
- The system may fail to issue a warning in certain scenarios, including but not limited to the following:
  - Targets are outside the mmWave radar's detection range.
  - Poor visibility conditions such as nighttime, rain, snow, heavy fog, etc.
  - The function is disabled.
  - The vehicle is not in Drive gear.
  - The front bonnet or boot is not properly closed or is opened while driving.
  - The driver is not wearing a seat belt or has unbuckled it.
  - The driver turns the steering wheel sharply or rapidly.
  - The accelerator pedal is deeply pressed.
  - The brake pedal is pressed hard and then released.
  - System initialisation has not been complete yet.
  - The system is in the process of starting, for example when vehicle is just powered on or restarting.
  - Scenarios listed under general system limitations.

  - The system is malfunctioning or requires servicing.
- The system may miss, misidentify, or delay obstacle detection due to factors such as front obstructions, target type, or appearance timing. This could result in no warning, false warning, or delayed warning. Such scenarios include but are not limited to:
  - When a target vehicle is approaching from the side at a high speed, the system may not be able to issue adequate warning.
  - The mmWave radars on both side of the front bumper are blocked by dirt, snow, or other obstructions.
  - Detection may be affected by noise or electromagnetic interference, leading to delays or malfunction.
  - The vehicle coming from the side suddenly changes the lane.
  - The target vehicle is obscured.
  - The radar cross section of the target (for example, a bicycle or electric moped) is too small.
  - The vehicle is running under severe weather, such as rain or snow.
  - MmWave radar(s) come off, are loosely installed, or are blocked.
  - The vehicle encounters complex metal guardrails or similar road conditions.
  - Vehicles coming from the front left or right side are detected too late at sharp turns, slopes, or other settings.
  - Other conditions outside the detection capability or range of the radar or camera.
- Vibration or collision may affect the calibration of mmWave radars, resulting in degraded system performance. In this case, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
- Unnecessary warning may be issued in too bright or reflective conditions due to puddles, shadows, manhole covers, metal plates, or road signs.

WARNING

- FCTA is only a driver assistance feature, and limitations and cautions listed here include only common situations affecting its functionality. Factors associated with system performance are more than these. Be sure to mind traffic around and make necessary response to danger in a timely manner to control the vehicle. The driver must be fully responsible for driving safety.
- Influence of weather, road conditions, and other factors may cause FCTA to fail or lead to late warning.
- Use FCTA based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.
- FCTA warnings may be delayed, missed, or falsely triggered due to system limitations.

Front Cross Traffic Braking (FCTB)

- When the vehicle is travelling at a speed below 12 mph (20 km/h), the front cross traffic braking (FCTB) system continuously monitor the environment ahead through sensors such as mmWave radars or cameras on both sides of the front bumper. If a potential collision with a crossing vehicle, pedestrian, or cyclist is detected, the system applies automatic braking to assist the driver in avoiding or mitigating the collision.

- During braking, the instrument cluster issues warnings via text and visual prompts, rendered according to the radar detection side.

WARNING

- FCTB serves as a driver assistance function only, which helps the driver avoid or reduce the impact of collisions.
- Braking is influenced by multiple variables, including the vehicle's speed, sensor accuracy, object type, spatial relationship to the target, system response time, braking system efficiency, and tyre status. Braking may occur incorrectly if the system misidentifies objects.
- Be sure to mind traffic around and make necessary response to danger in a timely manner to control the vehicle.

Function settings

- Enable or disable the FCTB on the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**.

REMINDER

- FCTB is active only when alert and brake are both enabled.
- This function is enabled as delivered from the factory.
- The system is enabled by default when the vehicle is started.

System limitations

- FCTB is a driver assistance system and may not function under all traffic, weather, visibility, road, or vehicle conditions.
- FCTB may not operate or disengage during a braking in certain conditions, including but not limited to the following:
  - Targets are outside the mmWave radar's detection range.
  - Poor visibility conditions such as nighttime, rain, snow or heavy fog.
  - The function is set to "OFF" or "Alert".
  - The vehicle is not in Drive gear.
  - The front bonnet or boot lid is not properly closed or is opened while driving.
  - The driver is not wearing a seat belt or has unbuckled it.
  - The driver turns the steering wheel sharply or rapidly.
  - The accelerator pedal is deeply pressed.
  - The brake pedal is pressed hard and then released.
  - System initialisation has not been complete yet.
  - The system is in the process of starting, for example when vehicle is just powered on or restarting.
  - Scenarios listed under general system limitations.
  - The system is malfunctioning or requires servicing.
- In the following situations, the system may fail to detect, misidentify, or delay detecting obstacles due to front occlusion, target type, position, timing, or other factors, leading to no braking, false braking, or delayed braking. This includes but is not limited to:
  - When a target vehicle is approaching from the side at a high speed, the system may not be able to brake.

- The mmWave radars on both side of the front bumper are blocked by dirt, snow, or other obstructions.
- Detection may be affected by noise or electromagnetic interference, leading to delays or malfunction.
- The vehicle coming from the side suddenly changes the lane.
- The target vehicle is obscured.
- The radar cross section of the target (for example, a bicycle or electric moped) is too small.
- The vehicle is running under severe weather, such as rain or snow.
- MmWave radar(s) come off, are loosely installed, or are blocked.
- The vehicle encounters complex metal guardrails or similar road conditions.
- The vehicle is heavily loaded.
- Vehicles coming from the front left or right side are detected too late at sharp turns, slopes, or other settings.
- Other conditions outside the detection capability or range of the radar or camera.

- Vibration or collision may affect the calibration of mmWave radars, resulting in degraded system performance. In this case, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
- Unnecessary braking may be issued in too bright or reflective conditions due to puddles, shadows, manhole covers, metal plates, or road signs.
- To avoid unnecessary repeated braking, FCTB will not be triggered again within tens of seconds after the initial activation.

WARNING

- FCTB is only a driver assistance feature, and limitations and cautions listed here include only common situations affecting its functionality. Factors associated with system performance are more than these. Be sure to mind traffic around and make necessary response to danger in a timely manner to control the vehicle. The driver is fully responsible for driving safety.
- Influence of weather, road conditions, and other factors may cause FCTB to fail or lead to late warning.
- Use FCTB based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.
- FCTB may be delayed, missed, or triggered unnecessarily due to system limitations.

Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR)

- The traffic sign recognition (TSR) system identifies speed limit signs on the road through the multi-purpose camera or maps. When the speed limit icon on the instrument cluster lights up, it means the vehicle speed should be within range.

Function overview

- TSR contains four sub-functions: Speed limit information function (SLIF), road sign information (RSI), speed limit forecast (SLF) and intelligent speed limit warning (ISLW).
- SLIF detects speed limit information by using cameras or maps and lights up the speed limit indicator on the instrument cluster when being activated.

- RSI detects speed sign information by using cameras or maps and provides auxiliary prompts by lighting up the speed sign indicator on the instrument cluster when being activated.
- SLF: under highway or urban expressway conditions, the speed limit information is obtained via the map. The instrument cluster displays the speed limit icon to provide advance notice of speed limit value and the distance to the new speed limit point.
- Intelligent speed limit warning: when the instrument cluster shows the speed is above the identified speed limit, the speed limit icon will provide a visual or audible alert to remind the driver not to exceed the speed limit.

Function settings

- Switch TSR and related features on or off on the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist** → **Traffic Sign Recognition**.
- Traffic sign recognition function is enabled by default.
- When TSR is off, neither TSR or any related feature is enabled.
- When TSR is on, SLIF and RSI is on while SLF and ISLW can be switched on or off according to needs.
- SLF: switches this feature on or off.
- Speed limit change prompt tone: mutes or unmutes the tone indicating speed limit sign change.
- Intelligent speed limit warning: enables or disables the indicator or audible alarm for driving over the speed limit sign.
- Speed limit warning (SLW): the audible alert for when the vehicle speed exceeds the speed limit can be enabled/disabled via the dropdown interface on the Home Screen.

REMINDER

- The map data will update regularly to ensure the system performance.
- The TSR system identifies speed limit signs, not any other traffic signs, and does not involves in the active control of the vehicle. Please drive responsibly.
- The front camera must not be blocked or exposed to strong lights. The function recovers once conditions return to normal. If not, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
- If TSR malfunctions and is unavailable, Perform the repair immediately.

System limitations

- As a driver assistance system, TSR may not respond to all traffic, weather, visibility, road conditions.
- The detection of speed limit signs is easily interfered by the environment. Situations that may lead to failure or performance degradation of the system include but are not limited to:
  - The front windscreen is dirty or fogged, or the front camera is blocked.
  - Sudden lighting changes, such as when the vehicle is entering or exiting a tunnel.
  - Unclear, distorted, inclined, reflective, partly blocked or covered speed limit signs.
  - Poor visibility on snowy, rainy, or foggy days.

- Weight or width limit signs not in standard size as per national regulations.
- Due to the time limitation of map-based speed limit data, the system may receive incorrect speed limits, such as those caused by road construction, sign changes, or new/cancelled speed signs.
- The positioning of vehicle is inaccurate in complex road conditions such as multi-level overpasses or parallel main and auxiliary roads.

- System operation may be affected by cracked windscreens within the front camera's field of view, dyed or improperly coated windscreen glass, reflective objects on the dashboard, and interference with camera sight.

WARNING

- TSR only serves to alert for speeding and cannot assist in speed control. Do not be over-reliant on it.
- TSR is only an assistance feature, and cautions here include only common situations affecting the TSR function. Factors associated with system performance are more than these. Be sure to mind traffic around and make necessary response to danger in a timely manner to control the vehicle. The driver is fully responsible for driving safety.

CAUTION

- Situations where lane lines may not be identified include, but are not limited to:
  - Unclear speed limit signs.
  - incomplete speed limit signs.

CAUTION

- Situations that may result in detection failure of the front camera or late function activation include but are not limited to:
  - Camera coming off, loosely installed, or blocked.
  - The vehicle is running under extreme weather, such as rain, snow, or smog.
- TSR may not work, work improperly, or deactivate itself when:
  - The system is in the process of starting. For example, the vehicle is just powered on or the driver assistance system is restarting.
  - Situations mentioned in System Limitations happen.
  - The driver assistance system malfunctions or requires servicing.

Side Safety Assist

Lane Departure Assist (LDA)

- When the vehicle unintentionally departs from its current lane, LDA alerts the driver or assists in steering the vehicle back into the lane.
- Lane Departure Assist (LDA) includes two sub-functions: lane departure warning (LDW) and lane departure prevention (LDP). The system's operating speed range is 40-93 mph (60-150 km/h).
- Lane departure warning (LDW): The system detects lane markings and the vehicle's position within the lane using cameras and other sensors. If

the vehicle unintentionally drifts out of its lane without a driver steering input (significant steering wheel or turn signal operation), the system issues a warning via instrument cluster display (lane marking on the departure side shown in red), steering wheel vibration, or an audible alert to help reduce lane departure risks.

- Lane departure prevention (LDP): The system detects lane markings and the vehicle's position within the lane using cameras and other sensors. If the vehicle unintentionally drifts out of its lane without a driver steering input (significant steering wheel rotation or turn signal operation), the system issues a warning via instrument cluster display (lane marking on the departure side shown in blue) and applies steering assistance to guide the vehicle back into the lane, helping reduce lane departure risks.

Function settings

- To adjust LDA settings, go to infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist** → **Lane Departure Assist**.
- All LDA functions are enabled as delivered from the factory and every time when the vehicle is started.
- The LDA alert mode is set as steering wheel vibration by default and can be changed to **Audio**, **Vibration** or **Both**.
- The lane departure sensitivity is set as "Medium" by default.When situations such as driver fatigue are detected, the system automatically adjusts to "High" sensitivity. Power cycling the vehicle will restore the sensitivity to "Medium".
- OFF: no LDA functions active.
- Warning: only warning enabled, no steering intervention.
- Correct: only prevention enabled, steering intervention applied.
- All activated: activating both warning and prevention at the same time.
- The system restores the default settings when the vehicle is started.

REMINDER

- LDA is suppressed if a turn signal is used and the vehicle changes lane as indicated by the turn signal.
- If the driver continuously drives over lane markings, LDA will be suppressed.
- LDP will deactivate if the driver forcefully presses the brake or accelerator pedal, or makes significant steering inputs.
- LDA is suppressed if any door or the bonnet is open or faulty.
- The function will temporarily suspend operation if any object blocks the camera or if it is exposed to strong lights. Function resumes automatically once conditions recover. If it does not, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
- While the LDP function is activated, the driver's hands must not be off the steering wheel, otherwise a prompt message will be displayed on the instrument cluster to take over the steering wheel. Hands-off alarm varies with the driver's hands-off frequency in a short time. The message "Please turn the steering wheel gently" displays on the instrument cluster for the first hands-off; "Please hold the steering wheel" for the second;

REMINDER

"Please take over immediately" for the third and above.

- When LDA fails, is displayed on the instrument cluster with an audible alert and a prompt message. Contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.

System limitations

- LDA is a driver assistance system and may not function under all traffic, weather, visibility, road, or vehicle conditions.
- The detection of land markings is easily interfered by the environment. Situations that may lead to failure or performance degradation of the system include but are not limited to:
  - Dirty or fogged front windscreen, or blocked front camera.
  - Glaring from direct sunlight, reflection in puddles, or oncoming vehicles
  - Sudden changes in light, such as when the vehicle is entering or exiting a tunnel
  - Lane markings obscured by direct sunlight or tree shadows.
  - Poor visibility on snowy, rainy, or foggy days.
  - Confusing or unclear lane markings, for example when old and new lines overlap or are temporarily altered during road construction.
  - Rapid changes in lane markings, such as lane splits, crossings, or merges.
  - Lane markings are unclear, too thin, worn, blurred or covered by dirt or snow.
  - Lanes are too narrow, the number of lanes increases or decreases, lane markings change suddenly (for example, on a ramp or exit), or in situations of complex line arrangements.
  - The vehicle is driving on steep slopes or sharp curves, following too closely behind another vehicle, or when the vehicle ahead blocks the lane markings.
- The system may be unable to correct in time due to slippery road surfaces or excessive lateral deviation speed, such as:
  - Poor road conditions, for example after road spraying, or wet/slippery surfaces following rain or snow.
  - Excessive or insufficient lateral deviation speed of the vehicle.
  - Other conditions that affect or reduce the vehicle's steering performance.
- System operation may be affected by cracked windscreens within the front camera's field of view, dyed or improperly coated windscreen glass, reflective objects on the dashboard, and interference with camera sight.

WARNING

- For your safety, do not test LDA functions intentionally.
- Do not be over-reliant on LDA functions. LDW only serves to alert for lane departure and cannot assist in steering control. The LDP function only assists in steering correction to return the vehicle to its original lane when the vehicle swerves from original lane. It cannot continuously control the vehicle to remain in the centre of

WARNING

the lane. Do not rely on LDP to avoid side collisions.

- LDA is only a driver assistance feature, and limitations and cautions listed here include only common situations affecting its functionality. Factors associated with system performance are more than these. The driver must stay aware of the surroundings and take necessary control measures promptly if the function is suppressed or deactivated. The driver is fully responsible for driving safety.
- Use LDA based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.

CAUTION

- Disabling LDA is recommended under any of the following circumstances:
  - Driving in a sporty style.
  - Severe weather conditions.
  - On uneven roads.
- Situations where lane lines may not be identified include, but are not limited to:
  - Unclear lane lines.
  - Incomplete lane lines.
- Situations that may result in detection failure of the camera or late activation of the function include but are not limited to:
  - Camera coming off, loosely installed, or blocked;
  - The vehicle is running under extreme weather, such as rain, snow, or smog.

CAUTION

  - LDW and LDP cannot be activated when the vehicle is towing a trailer or operating in special driving modes such as tow/snow/mud/sand/terrain mode.
- LDA may not work, may work improperly, or may deactivate itself when:
  - The system is in the process of starting. For example, the vehicle is just powered on or the driver assistance system is restarting.
  - Situations mentioned in General System Limitations happen.
  - The driver assistance system malfunctions or requires servicing.

Emergency Lane Keeping Assist (ELKA)

- When the vehicle unintentionally departs from the current roadway or lane and there is a collision risk with a vehicle approaching from the rear in an adjacent lane or with oncoming traffic in the opposite lane, ELKA assists in steering correction to help avoid or mitigate a potential collision.
- Emergent Lane Keeping Assist (ELKA) detects lane markings and road edges ahead with sensors such as cameras and detect vehicles in adjacent lanes with mmWave radars. If the system determines that the driver unintentionally departs from the road or is at risk of doing so, and there is a collision risk with a detected target vehicle, it assists in steering correction to help the vehicle stay in its current lane. This helps prevent unintentional road departures and reduces the

risk of collision with oncoming or overtaking vehicles in adjacent lanes.

Function settings

- To enable or disable ELKA, go to infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist** → **Emergency Lane Keeping Assist**.
  - ELKA is enabled as delivered from the factory and will remain enabled after each restart.
  - OFF: ELKA will not operate.
  - On: ELKA is active.

REMINDER

- ELKA will deactivate if the driver forcefully presses the brake or accelerator pedal, or makes significant steering inputs.
- If the turn signal is activated and the driver steers in the indicated direction, ELKA will be suppressed when the vehicle is departing toward the road edge or toward the opposite lane with oncoming traffic present.
- If the driver continuously drives over lane markings or the road edge, ELKA will be suppressed.
- If there is a risk of deviation from the road or side collision but corrective steering could result in a collision with an obstacle along the new path, ELKA will not intervene.
- The front camera must not be blocked or exposed to strong lights. The function recovers once conditions return to normal. If it does not, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.

REMINDER

- If a malfunction occurs, the indicator will illuminate in the instrument cluster and ELKA will be unavailable. Contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.

System limitations

- ELKA's detection of lane markings, road edges, and obstacles may be impaired under certain conditions, resulting in no intervention, inappropriate intervention, or reduced performance. Situations include but are not limited to:
  - Dirty or fogged front windscreen, or blocked front camera.
  - Glaring from direct sunlight, reflection in puddles, or oncoming vehicles.
  - Sudden lighting changes, such as when the vehicle is entering or exiting a tunnel.
  - Lane markings obscured by direct sunlight or tree shadows.
  - Unidentifiable road edge with grass, soil, or kerb.
  - Poor visibility on snowy, rainy, or foggy days.
  - Confusing or unclear lane markings, for example when old and new lines overlap or are temporarily altered during road construction.
  - Rapid changes in lane markings, such as lane splits, crossings, or merges.
  - Lane markings are unclear, too thin, worn, blurred or covered by dirt or snow.
  - Lanes are too narrow, the number of lanes increases or decreases, lane markings change suddenly

(for example, on a ramp or exit), or in situations of complex line arrangements.

- The vehicle is driving on steep slopes or sharp curves, following too closely behind another vehicle, or when the vehicle ahead blocks the lane markings.

- The system may miss, misidentify, or delay obstacle detection due to factors such as the type, position, timing, or occlusion of obstacles, resulting in delayed or failed intervention. Scenarios include:
  - Large vehicles ahead block the detection area of the radar or camera.
  - Obstacles move quickly or are at close range into the front or side of the vehicle.
  - Fences, water barriers, traffic cones, or other obstacles in the vehicle's front lateral or rear lateral areas that the system may fail to detect.
  - Obstacles block the radar or camera's detection area, such as vehicles, pedestrians, or cyclists in the front lateral or rear lateral areas.
  - Obstacles in the front lateral or rear lateral areas with low visual contrast against the surrounding environment.
  - Targets in the front lateral or rear lateral areas that can only be detected after the vehicle changes lanes.
  - Targets in the front lateral or rear lateral are located on a curve.
  - Other conditions outside the detection capability or range of the radar or camera.
- The system may be unable to correct in time due to slippery road surfaces or excessive lateral deviation speed, such as:
  - Poor road conditions, for example after road spraying, or wet/slippery surfaces following rain or snow.
  - Excessive or insufficient lateral deviation speed of the vehicle.
  - Driving on sharp curves.
  - Other conditions that affect or reduce the vehicle’ s steering performance.
  - System operation may be affected by cracked windscreens within the front camera's field of view, dyed or improperly coated windscreen glass, reflective objects on the dashboard, and interference with camera sight.

WARNING

- For your safety, do not test the ELKA function intentionally.
- The ELKA function only assists in steering correction to return the vehicle to its original lane when there is a collision risk due to unintended road or lane departure. It cannot continuously control the vehicle to remain in the centre of the lane. Do not rely on ELKA to avoid side collisions.
- ELKA is only a driver assistance feature, and limitations and cautions listed here include only common situations affecting its functionality. Factors associated with system performance are more than these. Be sure to mind traffic around and make necessary response to danger in a timely manner to control the vehicle. The driver is fully responsible for driving safety.

WARNING

- Use ELKA based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.

CAUTION

- Situations that may result in detection failure of the camera or late alarm include but are not limited to:
  - Camera coming off, loosely installed, or blocked.
  - The vehicle is running under extreme weather, such as rain, snow, or smog.
  - Partially or completely blocked camera lens.
- Situations that may result in detection failure of mmWave radars or late alarms include, but are not limited to:
  - MmWave radar(s) come off, are loosely installed, or are blocked.
  - The vehicle is running under extreme weather, such as rain, snow, or smog.
  - The vehicle encounters certain metal guardrails or similar road conditions.
  - ELKA cannot be activated when the vehicle is towing a trailer or operating in special driving modes* such as tow/snow/mud/sand/terrain mode.
- ELKA may not work, may work improperly, or may deactivate itself when:
  - The vehicle is at an intersection.
  - The system is in the process of starting. For example, the vehicle is just powered on or

CAUTION

the driver assistance system is restarting.

- Situations mentioned in General System Limitations happen.
- The driver assistance system malfunctions or requires servicing.

Blind Spot Detection (BSD)

- When a target in the driver's blind spot is detected, the system gives a warning to remind the driver of safe driving. The function is enabled by default.
- Blind Spot Detection (BSD) function uses sensors such as radars and cameras to detect targets (vehicles or riders) in the driver's blind spot on the side of the vehicle. When the vehicle runs at a speed of about 10-93mph (15-150 km/h), the indicator on the side mirror flashes when BSD detects a target in the blind area. If the driver toggles the turning signal lever at this time, the side mirror indicator at the target side, the instrument indicator, and the light-coloured radar wave on the same side of the instrument will flash, with an optional audible alarm given to remind the driver of the danger of collision.

REMINDER

- Do not attach any objects to the side mirror lens, as it may interfere with the normal operation of BSD.
- The driver should ensure the normal operation of the BSD system, keeping the BSD radar sensors in good condition. For example, if they are covered in dirt, snow or other obstructions,

REMINDER

they need to be cleared right away.

- BSD will not operate in the travel with trailer mode.
- Influence of vibration or collision on the side BSD radar sensor calibration can degrade system performance. In this case, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.

Function settings

- Enable or disable BSD on the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**.
- This function is enabled as delivered from the factory.
- When the vehicle is started, the system defaults to previous settings.

System limitations

- BSD is a driver assistance system and may not function under all traffic, weather, visibility, road, or vehicle conditions.
- Situations where BSD and related features may work improperly or deactivate themselves include but are not limited to:
  - Poor visibility conditions such as rain, snow, fog, heavy smoke, etc.
  - Driving on sharp curves.
  - The vehicle speed is less than 9mph (15 km/h).
  - The vehicle is overtaking the preceding vehicle or encountering an oncoming vehicle.
- The system is in the process of starting (for example, vehicle is just powered on or restarting).
- Scenarios listed under general system limitations.
- The system is malfunctioning or requires servicing.
- Poor lighting conditions such as glare or reflections may lead to false obstacle detections by the system. For instance, tracks, gantries, or reflective road studs could be misclassified as obstacles, resulting in an unintended warning.

WARNING

- When the BSD system gives a warning, the driver should avoid lane changes toward the warning-indicated side. The driver should ensure that lane changes are made in a safe manner at all times.
- BSD can not replace interior rearview mirror and side mirrors.
- You are supposed to always be alert to all possible dangers around and intervene or control the vehicle whenever necessary, for example, by slowing down, braking, or steering away as appropriate. Failure to observe this precaution could impair driving safety, resulting in an accident and even property loss or personal injuries.

Door Open Warning (DOW)

- When detecting a risk of collision when opening the door, the system gives a warning to alert the driver, reducing the possibility of collision and improving safety. The function is enabled by default.
- Door Open Warning (DOW) detects targets (vehicles, cyclists) on both sides of the vehicle through sensors

such as radars. When the vehicle is stationary with power-on or drives slowly at a speed below 1mph (2 km/h), the alarm indicator on the side mirror lights up when DOW detects that there is a risk of collision when opening the door. The indicator remains on until DOW is deactivated, alerting the driver to the risk. If the driver opens the door at this time, the indicator on the corresponding side flashes, accompanied by a audio prompt, reminding the driver to pay attention to the collision risk.

REMINDER

- Do not attach any objects to the side mirror lens, as it may interfere with the normal operation of DOW.
- The driver should ensure the proper functioning of DOW and maintain the condition of the radar installation areas in good condition. Any obstructions such as mud, snow, or other coverings should be promptly removed.
- In towing mode, DOW does not work.
- Vibration or collision may affect the calibration of the DOW's side assist radars, which will degrade the system performance. In this case, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.

Function settings

- Enable or disable DOW on the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist** → **Door Open Warning**.
- This function is enabled as delivered from the factory.
- When the vehicle is started, the system defaults to previous settings.

System limitations

- DOW is a driver assistance system and may not function under all traffic, weather, visibility, road, or vehicle conditions.
- Situations where DOW and related features may work improperly or deactivate themselves include but are not limited to:
  - Poor visibility conditions such as rain, snow, fog, heavy smoke, etc.
  - The vehicle stops at a turning point or near a wall.
  - There is a large vehicle behind the vehicle, which blocks the radar detection area of the vehicle.
  - There are small targets or slow moving targets.
  - The target speed is too high or there is turning behaviour, such as the target vehicle changing lanes to the rear of the vehicle, or other vehicles suddenly changing lanes and entering the detection area behind the vehicle.
- The system is in the process of starting. For example, the vehicle is just powered on or the driver assistance system is restarting.
- Scenarios listed under general system limitations.
- The system is malfunctioning or requires servicing.
- Poor lighting conditions such as glare or reflections may lead to false obstacle detections by the system. For instance, tracks, gantries, or reflective road studs could be misclassified as obstacles, resulting in an unintended warning.

WARNING

- DOW cannot detect objects behind other vehicles or obstacles.
- DOW cannot replace the use of interior and exterior rearview mirrors or manual visual inspections by drivers and passengers. Active observation of the door opening environment before getting off is the most effective measure and responsibility for drivers and passengers to ensure personal safety.
- DOW may give a warning when there is no risk of collision. Stay alert and monitor traffic to decide if action is needed.
- DOW can only prompt the collision risk through warning, but cannot avoid the collision accident.
- You are supposed to always be alert to all possible dangers around and intervene or control the vehicle whenever necessary, for example, by slowing down, braking, or steering away as appropriate. Failure to observe this precaution could impair driving safety, resulting in an accident and even property loss or personal injuries.

Rear Safety Assist

Rear Collision Warning (RCW)

- The system issues a warning to the driver when a collision from behind is detected while moving forward. The function is enabled by default.
- When the vehicle runs at a speed below 93mph (150 km/h), the RCW system detects the driving environment behind the vehicle in real time through sensors such as radars. The system issues a warning when it identifies that the rear vehicle may rear-end the vehicle.
- During warning, the interior ambient lights and the front left/right ambient lights on the corresponding side are steady on, and the red area at the rear of the vehicle image on the instrument cluster is highlighted. In addition to issuing a warning to the driver on the instrument cluster, the vehicle simultaneously activates the hazard warning lights to alert following drivers of a potential collision risk.
- When reversing, the RCW system does not work.

WARNING

- The RCW system is a driver assistance feature. Its activation may be afffected by factors such as vehicle speed, obstacle type, distance to the obstacle, driving environment, and system response delay, which may result in untimely warnings, missed alerts, or false alarms. RCW cannot replace the driver's driving and judgement.
- The driver must ensure the normal operation of RCW, keeping its radars in good condition. For example, dirt, snow, or other obstructions need to be cleared right away.
- In towing mode, RCW does not work.
- Vibration or collision may affect the calibration of the RCW's rear assist radars, which will degrade

WARNING

the system performance. In this case, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.

Function settings

- Enable or disable RCW on the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**.

System limitations

- RCW is a driver assistance system and may not function under all traffic, weather, visibility, road, or vehicle conditions.
- The RCW system only takes effect when the vehicle is stationary or moving forward. When reversing, the RCW system does not work.
- The system may fail to issue a warning in certain scenarios, including but not limited to the following:
  - Poor visibility conditions such as rain, snow, fog, heavy smoke, etc.
  - Any door, the bonnet, or the tailgate is open or faulty.
  - The driver turns the steering wheel, or the vehicle has a risk of lateral instability (such as excessive steering wheel angle or high steering rate).
  - The driver brakes hard.
  - The system is in the process of starting. For example, the vehicle is just powered on or the driver assistance system is restarting.
  - Scenarios listed under general system limitations.
  - The system is malfunctioning or requires servicing.
- In the following situations (including but not limited to), the system may fail to detect, misidentify, or experience delayed detection of obstacles due to rear obstructions, obstacle type, position, timing, or other factors, which may result in no warning or delayed warning.
  - Poor weather conditions such as rain, snow, or fog.
  - There is a large vehicle behind the vehicle, which blocks the detection area of the radars or cameras of the vehicle.
  - There are situations where the vehicle's rear is obstructed, or the obstacle has low contrast with the forward visibility environment, leading to unclear, inaccurate, or incomplete detection of the obstacle.
  - The vehicle or the rear target is in a curve.
  - The vehicle's rear has a target that can only be detected after the vehicle changes lanes.
  - High-speed objects, such as fast-moving vehicles or sudden rear-approaching vehicles.
  - The vehicle is reversing.
  - Other conditions outside the detection capability or range of the radar or camera.
- Poor lighting conditions such as glare or reflections may lead to false obstacle detections by the system. For instance, tracks, gantries, or reflective road studs could be misclassified as obstacles, resulting in an unintended warning.

WARNING

- The RCW system is a driver assistance feature. Its activation may be afffected by factors such as vehicle speed, obstacle

WARNING

type, distance to the obstacle, driving environment, and system response delay. RCW only provides reminder assistance and cannot replace the driver's driving and judgement. Do not rely heavily on the warning issued by the RCW system. RCW cannot replace the driver's driving and judgement.

- RCW can only remind the collision risk through the reminder, and can not avoid the collision accident or reduce the collision injury. When the vehicle issues a warning, the driver should take immediate safety measures to prevent the vehicle from further danger.
- RCW may be delayed, missed, or falsely triggered due to system limitations.
- You are supposed to always be alert to all possible dangers around and intervene or control the vehicle whenever necessary, for example, by slowing down, braking, or steering away as appropriate. Failure to observe this precaution could impair driving safety, resulting in an accident and even property loss or personal injuries.

Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA)

- When the vehicle is reversing, the RCTA system detects the vehicles travelling in the blind spot at the back. The system gives a warning when it is detected that there is a risk of collision between the vehicle and the rear lateral crossing vehicle, pedestrians or riders. The operating speed range of the rear lateral collision warning system is 0-9 mph (0-15 km/h).
- When the system gives a warning, the instrument cluster displays light grey radar waves on the corresponding side of the vehicle, textual prompts, audible alarm and voice broadcast, and triggers target object rendering to alert the driver of potential risks.

WARNING

- RCTA is a driver assistance feature. Its activation may be afffected by factors such as vehicle speed, sensor accuracy, obstacle type, distance to the obstacle, driving environment, and system response delay, which may result in untimely warnings, missed alerts, or false alarms. Be sure to mind traffic around and make necessary response to danger in a timely manner to control the vehicle.

Function settings

- Enable or disable the RCTA on the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**.

REMINDER

- This function is disabled as delivered from the factory.
- When the vehicle is started, the system defaults to previous settings.

System limitations

- RCTA is a driver assistance system and may not function under all traffic, weather, visibility, road, or vehicle conditions.

- The system may fail to issue a warning in certain scenarios, including but not limited to the following:
  - Targets are outside the mmWave radar's detection range.
  - Poor visibility conditions such as nighttime, rain, snow, heavy fog, etc.
  - The function is disabled.
  - The vehicle is not in Reverse gear.
  - System initialisation has not been complete yet.
  - The system is in the process of starting, for example when vehicle is just powered on or restarting.
  - Scenarios listed under general system limitations.
  - The system is malfunctioning or requires servicing.
- In the following situations, the system may fail to detect, misidentify, or delay detecting obstacles due to rear occlusion, target type, position, timing, or other factors, leading to no warning or delayed warning. This includes but is not limited to:
  - The vehicle coming from behind changes the lane suddenly.
  - The target vehicle is approaching from behind at a high speed.
  - The vehicle drives at sharp turns, slopes, or other settings.
  - The target is obscured.
  - The vehicle is running under severe weather, such as rain or snow. Radar coming off, loosely installed, or blocked; The vehicle encounters certain metal guardrails or similar road conditions.
  - Detection may be affected or delayed in some environments. If the radar reflective cross section of the target (a bicycle, three-wheelers, four-wheelers, pedestrian, electric bicycles, motorcycle, or non-standard vehicles, for example) is too small, the system may not be able to establish its distance to the target ahead, resulting in either late or no response to the target.
  - The mmWave radar may malfunction or misidentify targets due to interference from other mmWave radars.
- In towing mode, RCTA does not work.
- Vibration or collision may affect the calibration of mmWave radars, resulting in degraded system performance. In this case, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
- Unnecessary warning may be issued in too bright or reflective conditions due to puddles, shadows, manhole covers, metal plates, or road signs.

WARNING

- RCTA is only a driver assistance feature, and limitations and cautions listed here include only common situations affecting its functionality. Factors associated with system performance are more than these. Be sure to mind traffic around and make necessary response to danger in a timely manner to control the vehicle. The driver must be fully responsible for driving safety.
- Influence of weather, road conditions, and other factors may cause RCTA to fail or lead to late warning.
- Use RCTA based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.

WARNING

- RCTA may be delayed, missed, or falsely triggered due to system limitations.

Rear Cross Traffic Braking (RCTB)

- Rear Cross Traffic Braking (RCTB)is used if the vehicle meets another vehicle crossing the road when leaving a vertical/slanted parking space. It gives a warning and helps the driver brake to prevent collision, especially when the visual field of the driver is blocked by the vehicle parking beside. The operating speed range of the rear lateral impact braking system is 0-6 mph (0-10 km/h).
- When braking, the instrument cluster displays light grey radar waves on the corresponding side of the vehicle and textual prompts to alert the driver of potential risks.

WARNING

- RCTB serves as a driver assistance function only, which helps the driver avoid or reduce the impact of collisions.
- Braking is influenced by multiple variables, including the vehicle's speed, sensor accuracy, object type, spatial relationship to the target, system response time, braking system efficiency, and tyre status. Braking may occur incorrectly if the system misidentifies objects. Be sure to mind traffic around and make necessary response to danger in a timely manner to control the vehicle.

Function settings

- Enable or disable the RCTB on the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**.

REMINDER

- This function is disabled as delivered from the factory.
- When the vehicle is started, the system defaults to previous settings.

System limitations

- RCTB is a driver assistance system and may not function under all traffic, weather, visibility, road, or vehicle conditions.
- The system may fail to brake in certain scenarios, including but not limited to the following:
  - Targets are outside the mmWave radar's detection range.
  - Poor visibility conditions such as nighttime, rain, snow or heavy fog.
  - The function is set to "OFF" or "Warning only".
  - The vehicle is not in Reverse gear.
  - The accelerator pedal is deeply pressed.
  - System initialisation has not been complete yet.
  - The system is in the process of starting, for example when vehicle is just powered on or restarting.
  - Scenarios listed under general system limitations.
  - The system is malfunctioning or requires servicing.
- In the following situations, the system may fail to detect, misidentify, or delay detecting obstacles due to rear

occlusion, target type, position, timing, or other factors, leading to no braking or delayed braking. This includes but is not limited to:

- The vehicle coming from behind changes the lane suddenly.
- The target vehicle is approaching from behind at a high speed.
- The vehicle drives at sharp turns, slopes, or other settings.
- The target is obscured.
- The vehicle is running under severe weather, such as rain or snow. Radar coming off, loosely installed, or blocked; The vehicle encounters certain metal guardrails or similar road conditions.
- Detection may be affected or delayed in some environments. If the radar reflective cross section of the target (a bicycle, three-wheelers, four-wheelers, pedestrian, cyclist, electric bicycles, motorcycle, or non-standard vehicles, for example) is too small, the system may not be able to establish its distance to the target ahead, resulting in either late or no response to the target.
- The mmWave radar may malfunction or misidentify targets due to interference from other mmWave radars.

- In towing mode, RCTB does not work.
- Vibration or collision may affect the calibration of mmWave radars, resulting in degraded system performance. In this case, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
- Unnecessary braking may occur in bright or reflective conditions due to puddles, shadows, manhole covers, metal plates, or road signs.
- To avoid unnecessary repeated braking, RCTB will not be triggered again within tens of seconds after the initial activation.

WARNING

- RCTB is only used as a driving assistance function, and limitations and cautions listed here include only common situations affecting its functionality. Factors associated with system performance are more than these. Be sure to mind traffic around and make necessary response to danger in a timely manner to control the vehicle. The driver must be fully responsible for driving safety.
- Influence of weather, road conditions, and other factors may cause RCTB to fail or lead to late braking.
- Use RCTB based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.
- RCTB may be delayed, missed, or triggered unnecessarily due to system limitations.

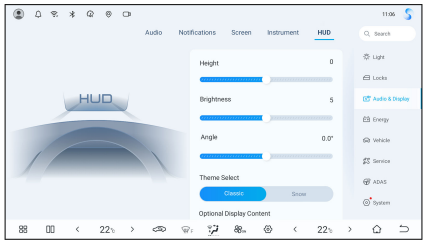
Head-up Display (HUD)*

Head-up Display (HUD): HUD projects important information, including vehicle speed, speed limit, ACC, lane departure, and BSD, into the driver's field of view on the front windscreen. It improves driving safety by preventing the driver from frequently changing the focus of eyes.

How to Use

- To enable or disable HUD, go to infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Audio & Display** → **HUD**.

- By factory default, HUD is on and the image is displayed. When it is disabled, no HUD image is displayed. The system defaults to the previous settings when the vehicle restarts.



  - Height: adjust the height of HUD virtual image in between -10 and 10. A total of 21 values are available, and the default value is 0.
  - Brightness: adjust the brightness of HUD virtual image in between 0 and 10. A total of 11 values are available, and the default value is 5.
  - Angle: used to adjust the angle of HUD virtual image. A total of 11 values are available, and the default value is 0°.
  - Theme Select: select Classic (default setting) or Snow mode according to the environment of the vehicle.
  - Settings optional for display: safe driving assistance can be selected and is enabled by default.

CAUTION

- Make sure that the head-up display is unobstructed.
- Wipe the dust on the HUD dust-proof board with a soft cotton cloth or paper towel.
- Make sure no water or other liquid flow into the opening of the head-up display.

Tyre Pressure Monitoring

- The direct Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) is an auxiliary system that monitors tyre pressure in real time to improve vehicle safety and comfort and reduce tyre wear and energy consumption due to insufficient tyre pressure.
- You can navigate to the driving information bar by pressing the button on the steering wheel and to the tyre pressure display screen by pressing the button again.

Tyre pressure system alarm

- When the pressure of any tyre is lower than 80% of the standard tyre pressure and the system is running, the tyre pressure fault warning light lights up and the tyre pressure value turns yellow. In that case, it is recommended to check for slow air leakage and inflate the tyre to the correct pressure value.
- When the temperature of any tyre is above 85°C for three consecutive minutes, the tyre pressure system gives a high temperature alarm, and the temperature value of the corresponding tyre turns yellow. It is recommended to stop the vehicle and wait for the tyre temperature to decrease before further driving.
- When the system is running, if a fault occurs, the tyre pressure fault warning light is solid on after flashing, and the message "No Signal" or "Please check TPMS" is displayed on the instrument cluster. In that case, check the tyre pressure monitoring module, and check for any surrounding electromagnetic source nearby. If the alarm persists for a long time, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.

WARNING

- The system does not stop vehicle travelling in the event of abnormal tyre pressure. Therefore, each time before driving, check whether the tyre pressure meets the requirements specified by the manufacturer. If not, do not drive, otherwise vehicle damage or personal injuries can occur.
- If pressure is found to be abnormal while driving, check the tyre pressure immediately. If the low pressure warning light comes on, avoid sharp turns or emergency braking, and reduce vehicle speed, pull it over to the kurb and stop as soon as possible. Driving with low tyre pressure can cause permanent damage to tyres and increase the likelibonnet of tyre scrapping. Serious tyre damage can lead to traffic accidents, resulting in serious injuries or deaths.

CAUTION

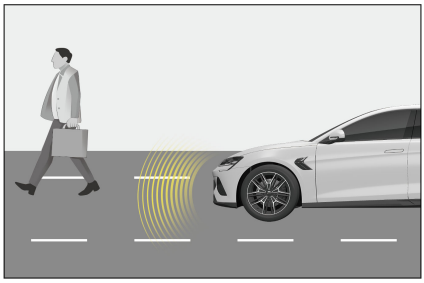
- The running time of the tyre pressure monitoring module is related to the daily travel distance and other factors.
- The monitoring module regularly transmits tyre pressure and other information to the display. Therefore, if the tyre pressure drops suddenly or there is a flat tyre, the monitoring module will not transmit data to the display until the next monitoring. In this case, the vehicle may be out of control. If there is a flat tyre and monitoring fails to inform, or if you feel that there are some tyre problems, stop driving immediately instead of waiting for the display to signal an alarm.
- Incorrectly installed monitoring module affects the air tightness of the tyre. It is recommended that the installation and replacement of the pressure monitoring module be carried out by professional technicians of a BYD authorised dealer or service provider in accordance with the requirements of the installation manual.
- Since tyre pressure varies with regional temperatures, inflate or deflate the tyres according to the values displayed on the instrument cluster and the standard tyre pressure values.
- The tyre pressure monitoring system may be disturbed by non-BYD approved electrical accessories on the vehicle. This is not a tyre pressure system failure.
- The tyre pressure system needs to be matched again after replacement of wheel rims or spare tyres* or tyre rotations. Go to a BYD authorised dealer or service provider to re-match the tyre pressure.

Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System (AVAS)

Acoustic vehicle alerting system (AVAS) refers to the alert sound to pedestrians near the vehicle when it is moving at a low speed.

- When driving forward:

- The alert volume increases with vehicle speed in the range of 0-12 mph (0-20 km/h).
- The alert volume decreases with vehicle speed in the range of 12-18 mph (20-30 km/h).
- The alert stops automatically when vehicle velocity is over 18 mph (30 km/h).



- The vehicle makes a continuous and balanced prompt sound when moving in reverse.

How to Use

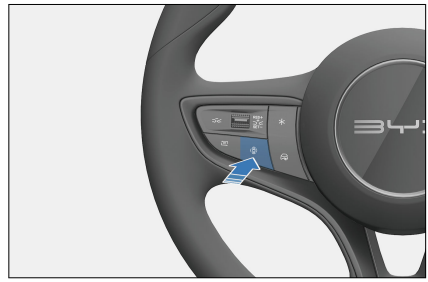
To turn on or off the engine sound simulator*, slide down from the top of the infotainment touchscreen to access the shortcut screen (not supported in some regions).

WARNING

- The AVAS pause switch can only be used if there are no other road users within a short distance, and no audio prompt is needed considering the surroundings (for example, in a traffic jam or on the motorway). As long as pedestrians may appear around the vehicle, the AVAS needs to be turned on.
- If the vehicle is running at low speed with AVAS turned off, it is unable to alert pedestrians to the approaching vehicle, which may cause car accidents and even casualties in severe cases.
- If the AVAS prompt sound cannot be heard when driving at a low speed, stop the vehicle in a relatively safe and quiet place, open a window, then drive in R gear and check whether you can hear an audible prompt from the front of the vehicle. If it is confirmed that there is no sound, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider to deal with it.

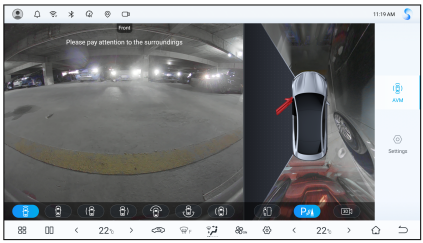
Around View Monitor

- With the ignition switched on, tap **Vehicle Image** app on the infotainment system homepage or press the button on the steering wheel to access the panoramic view.
- Shift into Reverse and the AVM screen is automatically displayed.



- Tap the front, rear, right, and left areas of the vehicle. A single view of the vehicle's front, rear, right, and left image is displayed in the image section on the left.
  - In the single front and rear views, double-tap the image section

to switch to a 180° perspective displayed in full screen.



- Tap the radar in the panoramic view to enable the radar display, and tap it again to disable. When the radar display is enabled, a warning is displayed as the vehicle is approaching an obstacle.
- Transparent body view: Tap the vehicle image switching button to switch between transparent and non-transparent vehicle images.
  - After the vehicle starts, the image before last power-off is displayed on the transparent panoramic view screen. Foreign bodies shown may be inconsistent with the actual ones in the underbody and surrounding blind areas. The underbody image update will begin only after the vehicle has started to run and will be complete when the vehicle has been driven beyond its length.
- 3D panoramic view: Tap the 3D panoramic view button (the button lights up) to access this view. Tap the 3D panoramic view button again (the button turns grey) to access 2D panoramic view.

WARNING

- The panoramic view system can provide transparent panoramic view to show the image below the vehicle. This function is only for assisting in observation of area below the vehicle during parking/driving. Investigation of foreign objects below the vehicle and dangerous situations should be carried out in any other manner to ensure the safety of personnel and the vehicle.
- When the vehicle runs at a low speed, the transparent panoramic view function is affected by speed fluctuation or multiple stops, so there will be misalignment between the images below the vehicle and that outside the vehicle.
- The panoramic view system is only to be used for parking/driving assistance. It is not safe to rely solely on this system to park or drive the vehicle, because there are some blind spots in front of and behind the vehicle. The surroundings of the car should be observed in other ways during the parking/driving process, so as to avoid accidents.
- This system uses wide-angle fisheye cameras, so the object on the display screen may appear somewhat deformed in comparison with the actual object.
- When the side mirrors are not extended in place, do not use the panoramic view system; and when the panoramic view system is used for parking/driving, ensure that all the car doors are closed.
- The distance to an object displayed on the panoramic view screen may be different from the distance perceived subjectively, especially when the object is

WARNING

closer to the vehicle. Assess the distance in various ways.

- Cameras are installed above the front grille, side mirrors, and the rear license plate. Make sure the cameras are unobstructed.
- To prevent affecting the performance of cameras, avoid directly washing these cameras when washing the vehicle body with high-pressure water. Wipe any water or dust off the camera in time.
- Protect the cameras from any impact to prevent damage or malfunction.
- After the vehicle is powered on, if you press the panoramic view start button or shift into reverse while the infotainment system is not fully activated, the output on the panoramic view screen will be delayed or the screen will flash. This is a normal part of the camera power-on process.

Lighting

Intelligent High Beam Control (IHBC)

- Intelligent High Beam Control (IHBC) is a driver assistance function that helps the driver use the high beams correctly in the dark. In the dark, the system switches from low beam to high beam to provide the driver with the maximum field of vision. When an oncoming vehicle is detected, the system automatically switches from high beam to low beam to prevent dazzling other drivers. It also automatically switches to low beam in urban areas or under other conditions.

Function settings

- Enable or disable IHBC on the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Light** → **Exterior** → **Intelligent High Beam Control**.
- When the vehicle is started, the system defaults to previous settings.
- Intelligent high beam indicator examples:

Intelligent High Beam Control standby	Intelligent High Beam Control activated	Intelligent High Beam Control failure
		

IHBC on/off conditions

- Auto activation conditions:
  - The light switch is in AUTO position.
  - The vehicle speed is 22-86 mph (35-140 km/h).
  - The area in front of the vehicle is dark.
- Auto off conditions:
  - During daylight or nighttime conditions, the system automatically suppresses the high beam when sufficient ambient lighting is detected on the road.
  - At night, the system automatically suppresses the high beam when other vehicles or pedestrians are

detected within a certain range in front of the vehicle.

- At night, turning on turn signal suppresses the high beam. After the turn signal is turned off, the high beam is activated again if conditions are met.

WARNING

Due to a variety of environmental factors and conditions, the intelligent high beam may be triggered or disabled by mistake. Typical scenarios include, but are not limited to:

- The weather, such as fog, rain or snow, is extremely terrible for driving.
- There are traffic participants with poor lighting (such as pedestrians and bicycles), railways or waterways nearby, or wild animals on the roads.
- There are highly reflective objects around (e.g., traffic signs on motorways, water reflection on the road surface, etc.).
- The front windscreen is dirty, covered in mist, or blocked by stickers or decorations.

CAUTION

- The IHBC system is an auxiliary light control function, but the system cannot completely replace the driver's judgement. The driver must observe road regulations and actively switch between high and low beams according to road condition changes at all times.
- In case the vehicle has been involved in a collision or the sensor has been reassembled, go to a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for sensor calibration so as to avoid affecting system performance.

REMINDER

- System malfunctions or lighting system failures can affect the IHBC function.
- Activating high beam manually will suppress HMA function.

Parking Assist System

- During parking, the parking assist system detects obstacles using sensors and alerts the driver to their proximity via an image on the infotainment touchscreen and an audible alarm.
- This system aids in reversing, but always remain aware of the surroundings behind and around the vehicle during reversing.
- When you shift into Reverse, the infotainment touchscreen will automatically display a reversing image.
- Once reversing is complete, the screen will return to its previous screen.

WARNING

- When the vehicle is in Drive with a speed of over 7 mph (10 km/h), the parking assist system will cease to operate.
- Do not place any objects within the sensors' working range.

WARNING

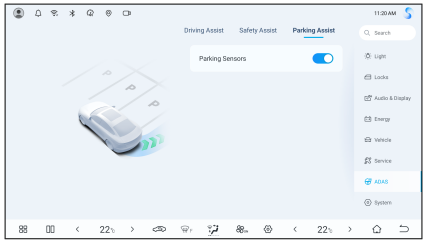
- To prevent sensor malfunction, do not wash the sensor with water or steam.

REMINDER

- The safety lines for reversing provide distance reference only when the vehicle is unloaded.
- For your driving safety, when the reversing image is displayed, all buttons will be disabled except some volume and calls-related buttons.

Parking Radar Switch

- To enable or disable the parking radar system, go to infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **ADAS** → **Parking Assist**.
- When the ignition is switched on and EPB is released, the parking assist system is enabled automatically.



- When enabled, the system raises an alarm if obstacles are found surrounding the vehicle; when disabled, it does not.

Sensor Type

- When the sensor detects an obstacle, an image is displayed on the infotainment touchscreen* according to the location of the obstacle and its distance from the vehicle.
- When the driver conducts parallel parking or reverse parking, the sensor measures the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle and communicates this information through the infotainment touchscreen and the speaker. Be aware of the surroundings when using this system.

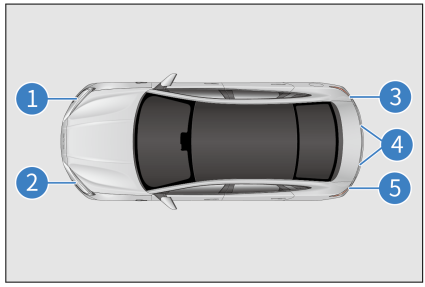
① Front right corner sensor

② Front left corner sensor

③ Rear right corner sensor

④ Rear left and right middle sensors

⑤ Rear left corner sensor



Distance Display Alarm

When the sensor detects an obstacle, the location of the obstacle and its approximate distance from the vehicle are displayed on the infotainment touchscreen, and the speaker beeps.

Working example of centre sensors

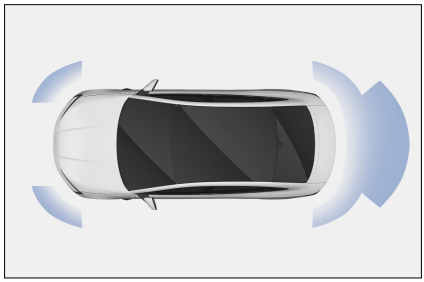
Approximate Distance	Touchscreen Display Example	Alarm Sound
About 28~47 in. (700~1200 mm)		Slow
About 12-28 in. (300-700 mm)		Fast
About 0-12 in. (0-300 mm)		Continuous

Working example of corner sensors

Approximate Distance	Touchscreen Display Example	Alarm Sound
About 12-23 in. (300-600 mm)		Fast
About 0-12 in. (0-300 mm)		Continuous

CAUTION

- The system has a blind spot range of 0-200 mm with reduced detection accuracy and less precise alerts. Alerts within 0-200 mm are for reference only.



Working Sensors and Detection Range

- All sensors are activated upon reversing.
- The illustration shows the sensors' detection range. Sensors have a range limitation, so drivers must check the surroundings before slowly reversing the vehicle.

REMINDER

- The parking assist system is only for assistance, and is not a substitute for personal judgment.

REMINDER

Be sure to operate the vehicle based on your observations.

- Sensors will not work properly if accessories or other objects are placed within their detection range.
- In some cases, the system cannot operate properly and will fail to detect certain objects as the vehicle approaches them. Therefore, be sure to observe the vehicle's surroundings at all times. Do not rely solely upon the system.
- Failure of the reversing radar system is indicated by a message on the instrument cluster and a beep, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible in the event of the error message.

Sensor detection information

- Certain vehicle conditions and surroundings may affect the sensors' ability to accurately detect obstacles. Detection accuracy may be affected if:
  - There is dirt, water or fog on the sensor.
  - There is snow or frost on the sensor.
  - The sensor is masked in any way.
  - The vehicle leans significantly to one side or is overloaded.
  - The vehicle is moving on particularly bumpy roads, slopes, gravel or grass.
  - The sensor has been repainted.
  - The vicinity is noisy due to honking of vehicles, motorcycle engines, air brakes of large vehicles, or other noises that produce ultrasonic waves.
  - There's another vehicle with parking assist system nearby.
  - The vehicle is fitted with a tow eye.
  - The bumper or the sensor was hit hard.
  - The vehicle is approaching a high or zigzag kerb.
  - The vehicle is driving in the sun or in the cold.
  - The vehicle is fitted with non-original suspension that is lower than the original one.
- Except as described above, sensors may not be able to correctly determine the actual distance due to the shape of the object.
- The shape and material of obstacles may prevent sensors from detecting them, especially the following:
  - Electric wires, fences, and ropes.
  - Cotton, snow, and other materials that absorb radio waves.
  - Any object with sharp edges and corners.
  - Low obstacles.
  - High obstacles facing outwards towards the vehicle.
  - Any object under the bumper.
  - Any object close to the vehicle.
  - Persons near the vehicle (depending on the type of clothing).
- If an image is displayed on the infotainment touchscreen or there is a beep, it may be that the sensor detects an obstacle or is interfered. If the issue persists, go to a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for inspection.

CAUTION

- To prevent sensor malfunction, do not rinse or apply steam to the sensor area.

Driving Safety Systems

For better driving safety, the following driving safety systems works automatically based on driving conditions. However, these systems only provide assistance, and excessive reliance on them is not recommended.

Intelligent Power Braking System

- The intelligent power braking system is an advanced decoupled electro-hydraulic braking system, incorporating vacuum booster, electronic vacuum pump, and ABS/ESC functionality.
- The system assists vehicle braking according to the driver's demands. It offers advanced control functions such as ABS, electronic brake force distribution (EBD), traction control system (TCS), vehicle dynamic control (VDC), comfort parking (CST), hill-start hold control (HHC), hydraulic brake assist (HBA), and controlled deceleration for parking brake (CDP) to improve vehicle stability and comfort, and the recovery efficiency of brake energy.

Vehicle dynamics control (VDC)

When the vehicle turns suddenly while running, the VDC system determines the driver's intention based on such information as steering wheel's angle and vehicle speed, and continuously compares with the actual condition. If the vehicle swerves from the normal lane, the VDC corrects the situation by engaging brakes to the corresponding wheels to help the driver control skidding and maintain directional stability.

Traction control system (TCS)

TCS prevents the drive wheels from skidding during acceleration by reducing the motor power, and, when necessary, applies braking forces to prevent drive wheels from spinning. It makes it easy for the vehicle to start, accelerate, and climb under adverse driving conditions.

WARNING

- TCS may not work effectively in the following situations:
  - On slippery roads, even if TCS is working properly, it may not be able to control the direction and meet power requirements.
  - Do not drive in conditions where the vehicle may lose its stability and power.

Hill hold control (HHC)

After the brake pedal is released, HHC maintains brake pressure for one second to prevent backward sliding.

Hydraulic brake assist (HBA)

When you press the brake pedal quickly, HBA detects that the vehicle is in emergency condition. It quickly increases the brake pressure to the maximum so that ABS can intervene more quickly and shorten the braking distance effectively.

Controller deceleration parking (CDP)* for parking brake

When press and hold the "P" button during driving, CDP starts working so that the vehicle brakes at a constant deceleration (0.4 g if EPB is engaged but the brake pedal is not pressed, and 0.8 g if EPB is engaged and the brake pedal is pressed) until the vehicle stops.

CDP stops working when the "P" button released.

Electronic stability control (ESC) instructions

Intelligent power braking system has the following new functions compared with the original ESC system:

- Brake assist mode
  - The brake assist mode is used to adjust the brake pedal feel. The relation curve between the brake pedal depth and the vehicle deceleration varies across different modes for the driver to choose their preferred pedal feel.
  - To set the brake assist mode, go to the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Vehicle** → **Driving Control** → **Brake Assist Mode**, and select **Comfort** or **Sport**.
- Comfort parking (CST)
  - Comfort parking: When the vehicle decelerates to stop in a non-emergency situation, intelligent power braking system reduces the stop-instant suspension pitch and impact by controlling the brake pressure of the four brakes, and provides a smooth stop feeling.
  - To enable or disable comfort parking, go to the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Vehicle** → **Driving Control** → **Comfort Parking**.
  - After the function is triggered, the braking distance may increase by 0.8-2 in (2-5 cm). Increase the distance from the vehicle or obstacle ahead accordingly before stopping your vehicle.
- Brake disc wiping
  - Brake disc wiping function: When the wiper switch is on or the rain sensor detects rain, the integrated brake control system applies a small brake pressure to all four brakes so that pads come into contact with discs to remove the water film from the discs. This shortens brake response time and braking distance.
  - As long as the system detects rain or the wiper ON signal, the brake discs are repeatedly wiped at certain intervals to improve safety.
- ESC working
  - If there is a risk of skidding or backsliding when the vehicle starts on a slope, or if either drive wheel is spinning, the ESC indicator flashes to indicate that ESC system is working.
- Disabling ESC
  - If the vehicle gets stuck in snow or mud, ESC may reduce power output from the motor to the wheels. In this case, you may need to turn off the system to get out of the jam.
- Turning off ESC
  - To turn off the ESC system, tap infotainment system → ⚙ → **Vehicle** → **Driving Control**. ESC also checks its operating status in real time. If ESC OFF switch is pressed while ESC system is working, the system will complete the active intervention control rather than executes the "shutdown" command immediately. ESC is disabled only after the intervention control is complete.
- Some ESC functions may be re-enabled if you press the ESC OFF switch again or the vehicle speed exceeds the threshold of 50 mph (80 km/h). In order to prevent ESC from being turned off suddenly, ESC can be activated again only when it is not in a vehicle dynamic intervention state.
- Restarting ESC after the motor is powered off

- When the ESC system is turned off, restarting the motor automatically restarts ESC system.

- ESC start and speed linkage
  - Although already turned off, the ESC system can start on its own if the vehicle becomes extremely unstable as the speed increases and exceeds the threshold of 50 mph (80 km/h)

- With ESC system activated
  - If the ESC fault indicator flashes, drive with caution.

- When ESC system is disabled
  - Be careful when ESC is disabled, and drive at speeds suitable for road conditions. The ESC system ensures vehicle stability and its driving force. Never turn it off unless necessary.

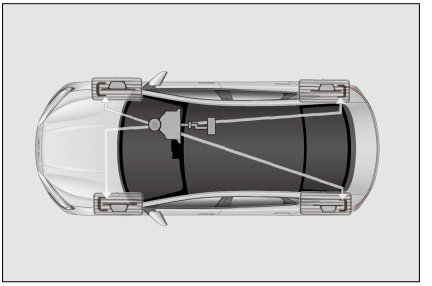
- Replacing tyres
  - Make sure all tyres are of the same size, brand, tread pattern, and total load. In addition, be sure to inflate tyres to the recommended pressure.
  - Neither ABS nor ESC will work properly if the vehicle is fitted with different tyres.
  - For details on tyre or wheel replacement, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.

- Tyre and suspension handling
  - The use of any defective tyre or modified suspension affects the driving safety system and may cause the system to fail.

Anti-lock Braking System

- The ABS hydraulic system has two separate circuits, each running diagonally through the vehicle (left front wheel brake connected to the right rear wheel brake). If one circuit fails, two wheels can still be braked.

- ABS helps maintain the steering control by preventing the wheels from locking or skidding when brake is engaged suddenly or on slippery roads.



- When the front tyres skid, there is no steering control, which means that the vehicle still moves forward even though the steering wheel is turned. ABS helps prevent locking and maintain steering control since pulsating prompt brake is much faster than human reaction.

- Never pulsate the brake pedal, otherwise ABS may malfunction. While steering away from danger, a firm and steady pressure should always be maintained on the brake pedal for ABS to work.

- When the ABS is working, the brake pedal will vibrate, which may produce noise. This is because the ABS is pulsating the brake quickly, which is normal.

Electronic brake force distribution (EBD)

- The EBD is an auxiliary function of ABS. Before ABS acts, if the skid rate of rear wheel is high, ABS will adjust the brake pressure of rear wheel for a smoother and more ideal brake force distribution.

WARNING

- ABS cannot work effectively under the following conditions:
  - Tyres with inadequate grip are used (for example, excessively worn tyres used on snow-covered roads).
  - The vehicle skids when driving at a high speed on slippery roads.
- ABS is not designed to reduce the braking distance of the vehicle. Always keep a safe distance from the vehicle ahead when:
  - Driving on slippery, muddy, sandy or snowy roads.
  - Driving on roads with multiple potholes or on uneven roads.
  - Bumpy roads.

CAUTION

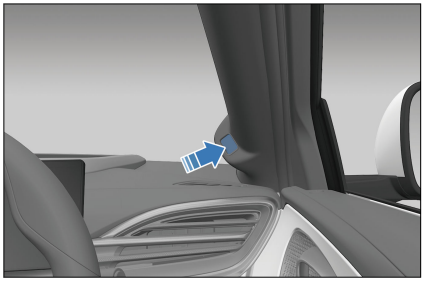
- If the ABS fault warning light is still on while the braking system warning light is on, immediately park the vehicle in a safe place. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- In this case, if brakes are applied, the ABS will not work and the vehicle will become extremely unstable.
- Anti-lock Braking System (ABS) cannot shorten the time and distance needed for braking. This device only helps you control steering when braking. Please always keep a safe distance from other vehicles.
- ABS cannot prevent skidding caused by sudden direction change, such as trying to make a sharp turn or change lanes suddenly. Always drive carefully at a safe speed, regardless of road and weather conditions.
- ABS does not prevent decrease in stability either. When applying the brake in an emergency, the steering should be moderate. A large or sharp turn during the driving can cause the vehicle to swerve into oncoming traffic or run off the road.
- When driving on wet or soft or uneven roads (e.g., waterlogged concrete roads, waterlogged epoxy painted roads, sandy roads, snowy roads, etc.), vehicles equipped with ABS may require longer braking distances than vehicles without ABS. In such cases, reduce the vehicle speed and keep a greater distance from other vehicles.

Driver Monitoring System (DMS)

The driver monitoring system (DMS), including fatigue and distraction reminder, is designed to monitor the driver's driving status with a camera and assess it. Based on the assessment, the system alerts the driver in a timely manner. The monitoring data will not be saved or uploaded to the server but instead will be deleted immediately after the assessment is complete.

How to Use

- The camera for DMS is mounted on the A-pillar of the driver side. Make sure it is unobstructed before use, or DMS may not function normally.



- To enable or disable fatigue driving warning or distraction driving warning (both enabled by factory default), go to infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Vehicle** → **Cabin Perception**. By default, the system is switched on each time when the vehicle is powered on.

Fatigue driving warning

- With the vehicle speed meeting the system activation condition, fatigue driving warning enabled and the camera unobstructed, when the system detects signs of fatigue, such as closing eyes, blinking and yawning, it alerts the driver through a visual warning on the instrument cluster, voice assistant, or an audible alarm.

Distraction driving warning

- With the vehicle speed meeting the system activation condition, distraction driving warning enabled and the camera unobstructed, when the system detects signs of distraction, such as loo in the right or left side mirror, it alerts the driver through a visual warning on the instrument cluster, voice assistant, or an audible alarm.

REMINDER

- Clean the DMS camera lens with a clean and soft cloth and exercise caution to prevent any damage to the surface.

Precautions

- The driver monitoring system is only an auxiliary system and is not capable of effective recognition and alarm-raising in all situations. It cannot completely replace the driver's subjective observation and judgement. The driver must maintain control of the vehicle at all times, complying with all road laws and regulations, and taking full responsibility for the vehicle.
- The proper functioning and accuracy of the driver monitoring assistance can be affected by a number of situations, including but not limited to:
  - Driver monitoring assistance is disabled.
  - The camera is directly exposed to strong light.
  - Part of the driver's face is exposed to light or the complete facial features are hard to recognise.
  - The driver wears infrared-blocking glasses or glasses with thick lenses.
  - The driver wears a mask or something that covers the face.
  - The driver is not properly seated or the driver's face is in the blind spot of the camera.

WARNING

- Please pull over to a safe location and rest immediately when you feel tyred or driver fatigue warning.

Intelligence Torque Adaption Control (iTAC) System*

When the vehicle is running, the intelligence torque adaption control

(iTAC) system can determine the driver's driving needs and vehicle state according to the information such as steering wheel angle and motor speed, quickly identify the vehicle state through the unique control architecture and algorithm, and dynamically adjust the driving torque of the front and rear axles, so that the driving state of the vehicle can better meet the driver's needs and the vehicle can still obtain better driving performance under complex road conditions. When the wheels show signs of slipping, this system can adjust the driving torque of the front and rear axles rapidly to ensure the stability of the vehicle torque and make the vehicle obtain better driving performance under different road surfaces.

- You can activate the function on the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Vehicle** → **Driving Control** → **iTAC**.

WARNING

- This function is not designed for unbridled driving. Make sure the braking system work normally in the following situations:
  - Vigorous driving behaviours such as drifting, and driving on continuous bends.
  - Driving on slippery, muddy, sandy or snowy roads.
  - Driving on roads with multiple potholes or on uneven roads.
  - Driving on bumpy roads.

REMINDER

- When there is braking participation or braking action, such as the driver stepping on the brake pedal and ESC triggering, this function will exit the priority guarantee braking.

Child Presence Detection (CPD)

After the vehicle is powered off and the driver's door is opened and then closed or locked, child presence detection (CDP) is performed to check if any child is left inside the vehicle. If child presence is detected, an alarm is given in the form of light flashing and honking. The A/C will be switched on soon after. To cancel the alarm, unlock or open any door.

How to Use

- To access the CPD setting interface, go to infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Vehicle** → **Cabin Perception**. Three options are provided: **OFF**, **ON**, and **Delay**.
- By default, the function is enabled each time the vehicle is powered on.
- Tap **Delay** to extend the alarm for five minutes for this trip.

System Response

- When CPD enabled with delay alarm mode, if life presence is detected after the vehicle is powered off and the doors are closed, the initial alarm (light flashing and honking) starts within 5 minutes and will last for about 6 seconds.
- If the alarm is not cancelled, the alarm will be upgraded in 90 seconds (light flashing and honking) and will last for 25 minutes.
- The A/C will be switched on three minutes after alarm escalation if it is

not cancelled, and will keep running for about 30 minutes.

- To cancel the alarm, tap the button on the infotainment touchscreen, unlock the vehicle, or open any door.
- You will receive messages in the BYD app and email of every initial alarm, alarm escalation and other system responses.

WARNING

- While light flashing, honking, app message prompts, email message, and A/C operation reduce the harm to the child(ren) in the vehicle, they cannot completely prevent harms.
- When a reminder is provided, check whether any child has been locked inside the vehicle promptly to avoid further harms.
- CPD is only an auxiliary system and is not capable of effective recognition and alarm-raising in all situations. The user must remain alert at all times and fully responsible for the lives in the vehicle.

CAUTION

- The system may misidentify adults, pets, or other lives as children and give false alarm.
- The alarm cannot be cancelled by unlocking the vehicle from the app.
- The system may not be able to trigger an alarm or switch on the A/C if the SOC is low. Keeping the vehicle at high SOC is recommended.

0-62 mph (0-100 km/h): Full Throttle Experience

Full throttle can be achieved when:

- The high-voltage battery SOC is 95% or above.
- The vehicle is in SPORT mode.
- The acceleration timer page is displayed in the menu.

WARNING

- Please be mindful of all relevant safety measures when experiencing this function.
- Before experiencing this function, check if the tyre, brake and other vehicle functions are in optimal conditions.
- Do not use this function when visibility is low (e.g. dust, haze and night).
- Do not use this function on slippery, snowy, muddy, or water-logged roads, nor on grass, sand, etc.
- Do not use this function on roads with complex traffic environments (e.g. at junctions, with pedestrians or other traffic participants).
- Do not use this function before you are fully familiar with the vehicle, so as to avoid accidents caused by incorrect operation.

05 IN-VEHICLE DEVICES

Infotainment System..... 182
A/C System..... 187
BYD App*..... 192
Storage..... 193
Other Devices..... 195

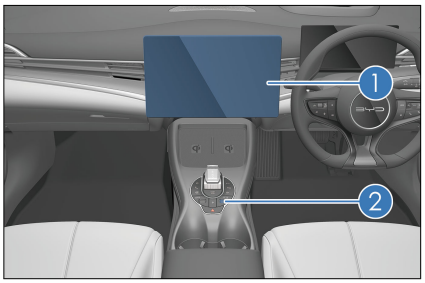
Infotainment System

Infotainment Touchscreen

When the ignition is on, the initial screen is displayed for several seconds and the infotainment system starts to work. To better experience infotainment functions, such as intelligent voice control, apps and video call, the system must be used after network connection.

① Infotainment touchscreen

② Scroll button



- When the infotainment system is already started, press the button to turn audio off, press a second time to turn audio on, and press and hold for three seconds to restart the infotainment system.
- Scroll up to turn volume up or down to turn volume down. Volume ranges from 0 to 39. A mute icon is displayed when volume is 0.

Reset to factory settings

- This function factory resets the infotainment system.
  - During the process, do not touch any infotainment button or turn off the power supply, or errors may occur.
  - The process takes two to five minutes.

WARNING

- Do not use a high-power inverter in the vehicle, as this may cause infotainment system malfunction.
- Do not format or root the device, as this may cause infotainment system or vehicle malfunction.

CAUTION

- To prevent damage to the touchscreen:
  - Touch the screen gently. If there is no response, remove fingers from the screen, then touch it again.
  - Clean the screen with a soft cloth. Do not use any cleaning product.
- Using the touchscreen
  - When the screen temperature is low, the image displayed may be darker or the system may work slightly slower than normal.
  - The screen may be dark or difficult to see when you are wearing sunglasses. In that case, change the viewing angle or take off the sunglasses.
  - Touchscreen buttons that are greyed out cannot be operated.
- The touchscreen interface shown here is for reference only.
- To better experience infotainment functions, such as intelligent voice control, apps and video call, the system must be used after network connection.

CAUTION

- It is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider in the event of a failure.

Navigation Bar

: returns to the previous page or exits the program.

: returns to the homepage.

: goes to vehicle setting screen.

: goes to the A/C screen.

: splits screen if applications support.

- The customised map* allows for destination searching, route planning, navigation (online or offline), real-time traffic conditions, voice broadcast, and route recommendation. You can also add home, work and favorite destinations.
- Most interactive controls are on the left side of the map for searching for charging piles, parking lots, and other interested places easily.

REMINDER

- The shortcut menu content on your vehicle may be different.

Gestures and Responses

Gestures and associated system responses are:

- Tapping: opens applications, selects functions, clicks icons on the touchscreen, or types characters.
- Dragging: touching and dragging an icon, thumbnail, or preview to the target position to change its location.
- Swiping: operational on homepage and app screens.
- Double-tapping: zooms in or out an image.
- Spreading/pinching: zooms in or out an image with two fingers.

OTA Update

- The vehicle supports over-the-air (OTA) updates. You can update your software to the latest by tapping → **System** → **Version** → **Version Update**.
- When available, new updates are prompted on the infotainment touchscreen. You can update it immediately, schedule an update, or update it by mobile phone (if supported) based on your vehicle usage.

CAUTION

- Do not move the vehicle during the update.
- Before the update, ensure that the vehicle is parked safely in Park gear, at a safe place with a stable network connection.
- Ensure the vehicle has a high SOC before starting the update.
- Do not install any third-party devices in the OBD port before or during the update.
- Make sure the vehicle has enough battery power before the update, as it cannot be charged or discharged during the process.

CAUTION

- During the update, vehicle functions are not available except the following: locking/unlocking with smart key or microswitch, interior lights, hazard warning light, and window controls.
- If the update fails, try again. If the retry fails, contact BYD customer service or a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for assistance.

BYD Assistant

BYD Assistant is an intelligent voice assistant that responds to your voice commands, such as requesting navigation, playing music/radio, making a phone call, and controlling in-vehicle devices.

- Waking up BYD assistant:
  - On the steering wheel, press the button.
  - Tap on the infotainment touchscreen.
  - Say the wake-up word: Hi, BYD.
- Your voice commands can be recognised after system wake-up.
- Give any instructions.
  - This may be "Go home" (shortcut locations set), "Play music", "Make a call" (contacts data and Bluetooth connection required), "Set the temperature to 23°C" , or "Turn on the seat ventilation for the driver". BYD Assistant then performs the recognised instruction.

Bluetooth Call

Connection

1. On Bluetooth Call screen, tap **Please connect Bluetooth** to establish connection.
2. Tap **Scan for device** to search for available devices.
3. Pair the available device, and make sure the paring code displayed on your phone is consistent with the code on the touchscreen.
4. Set Bluetooth when connection is complete.

Bluetooth Call

Go to the dialing screen when Bluetooth is connected.

- Tap **Contacts**, **Call log**, and **Missed calls**, or use dial keypad to make a call.
- Tap to zoom in or out the dialing screen.
- Tap to display or hide the dial keypad.
- In panoramic view screen, a small window pops up to inform driver of a call.

Speakers

- The dynaudio sound settings of the vehicle contains dynaudio sound, dynaudio focus and volume adjusted with speed. Go to the infotainment system → → **Audio & Display** → **Audio** to set.

Dynaudio focus

- Dynaudio sound field focus is divided into whole, driver, front passenger, rear, surround, and custom. Dynaudio

focusing technology is used to create a balanced sound field around passengers.

Dynaudio sound

- This feature offers five modes: acoustic, dynamic, soft, speech, and custom, catering to a range of auditory preferences.

Volume adjusted with speed

- When the function is enabled, it will adaptively adjust the sense of hearing and reduce the impact of environmental noises of road, tyre, wind and so on. The setting range is 0 to 7. 0 means off and values from 1 to 7 represent adjustment levels, with higher values resulting in a greater volume adjustment range. The value is 4 by default.

File Management

New folder

- Go to file management screen to create new folders. You can enter the folder name, and tap **OK** or **Cancel** to perform actions.
- Tap the top of the file management screen to change file sources.

Search

- Tap **Search** on the upper left corner and enter file names to search for target files.

Cut / **Copy**

- Tap and hold any file, select target files and operation (copy, move, or delete), and then go to the edit status.

Rename

- Touch and hold any file, select **Rename** in dialog displayed, rename the selected file, and then tap **OK**.

Delete

- Tap and hold any file, and then tap **Delete**.

Sort

- Files are sorted by name by default. You can also sort them by size, type, or time.

Attributes

- Touch and hold any file, and then tap **Details** to check its attributes.

Phone Projection

Phone projection* allows you to connect a smartphone to the vehicle and interact with certain mobile apps on the infotainment touchscreen.

WARNING

- Drive safely. Avoid any possible distractions, or accidents could result.

REMINDER

- Make sure the vehicle is in Park with the infotainment system turned on, and allow time to set up the phone projection app before you start your drive.
- The initial setup process must be completed on the phone: check prompts on the phone for security information, accept privacy policies, and grant necessary permissions.
- The first time you connect wirelessly, you will need to pair your phone and the vehicle via Bluetooth. For best results, keep your phone's Bluetooth, Wi-Fi,

REMINDER

and Location Services turned on while you complete the setup.

- Ensure your phone is in range of your mobile data network and has an active data plan.
- Availability of services whose names or logos are shown varies by country and language, and subscriptions for services may be required.

Apple CarPlay

- Connecting with a cable
  - Plug an iPhone to a USB data transfer port on the vehicle with a certified USB cable. Apple CarPlay is then connected.
- Connecting wirelessly
  1. Go to infotainment touchscreen → application screen, tap the Apple CarPlay icon , and pair your iPhone to the vehicle as prompted.
  2. After that, follow on-screen instructions to connect Apple CarPlay.
- Switching between Apple CarPlay and in-vehicle infotainment system
  - To exit Apple CarPlay user interface, tap the BYD icon on this interface, or or in the shortcut bar.
  - To access the Apple CarPlay user interface, tap the Apple CarPlay icon on the infotainment system's application screen.
- For available regions of Apple CarPlay, visit https://www.apple.com/ios/feature-availability/#apple-carplay.

Android Auto

- Connecting with a cable
  1. Plug a smartphone to a USB data transfer port on the vehicle with a certified USB cable.
  2. Follow the on-screen instructions to set up Android Auto.
- Connecting wirelessly
  1. Go to infotainment touchscreen → application screen, tap the Android Auto icon , and pair your smartphone to the vehicle as prompted.
  2. After that, follow on-screen instructions to connect Android Auto.
- Switching between Android Auto and in-vehicle infotainment system
  - To exit Android Auto user interface, tap on this interface, or or in the shortcut bar.
  - To access Android Auto user interface, tap the Android Auto icon on the infotainment system's application screen.
- To use Android Auto on the infotainment touchscreen, you need a compatible Android smartphone. You can check the list of compatible smartphones at g.co/androidauto/requirements undefined.

REMINDER

- Android Auto is integrated into phones with Android 10 and above. You do not need to download it.
- For wired or wireless connection, your phone might ask you to update Android Auto before you continue.

Trademark statement

- Apple CarPlay is a trademark of Apple Inc.
- Android and Android Auto are trademarks of Google LLC.

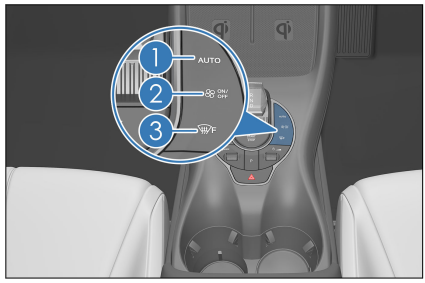
A/C System

A/C Buttons

① AUTO

② A/C ON/OFF

③ Front windscreen defroster



A/C Operation Interface



1	A/C operation interface
2	Seat Operation Interface
3	A/C ON/OFF
4	Auto mode
5	Ventilation
6	A/C button
7	Circulation mode
10	Max cooling
11	ION
12	A/C setting
13	Driver's temperature control
14	Air mode control
15	Front passenger's temperature control
16	Synchronisation button

8 Defroster for rear windscreen and side mirrors

9 Front windscreen defroster

17 Fan speed control

18 Air distribution

Function Definition

Auto mode

- Tap the auto button on the A/C interface, its indicator lights up and the auto mode is activated.
- If any manual control button is pressed in automatic operation mode, the corresponding status of the button pressed will be set and other statuses will continue to be adjusted automatically.

A/C ON/OFF

- Press this button or tap "ON" on the A/C operating interface to turn off the A/C. The air outlet mode keeps unchanged, while the air input mode turns to recirculation mode. Press this button or tap **OFF** on the A/C operating interface to turn off the A/C.
- With the A/C turned off, press this button or tap **ON** to turn on the A/C in the memorised modes, with the set temperature, blower speed and air outlet mode being those when the A/C was turned off last.

Fan speed control

- Tap the suitable blower speed level button to set the blower speed at a desired level. A higher blower speed level indicates a higher air volume.

Front windscreen defroster

- Tap this button to enter the front windscreen defrost mode, distributing air to the front windscreen and side windows. Press this button again; the A/C will return to the status used last time.
- Press this button on the screen to activate the defrosting and demisting function and no matter whether the compressor control button is operated or not, the A/C will also be turned on.

Temperature regulation

- Driver's temperature control
  - Individual Mode: Temperature regulation on the driver side.
  - Relative Mode: Temperature regulation on the driver and front passenger side.
  - To increase/decrease the temperature, tap the upper/lower arrow on the screen, or touch the temperature display area and then swipe downwards/upwards.
- Front passenger's temperature control
  - Individual Mode: temperature regulation for the front passenger.
  - Relative Mode: after the temperature is adjusted for the front passenger, the A/C system will automatically switch to the individual mode.
  - To increase/decrease the temperature, tap the upper/lower arrow on the screen, or touch the temperature display area and then swipe downwards/upwards.
  - "Lo"/"Hi" is displayed when the temperature is set to the lowest/highest value.

Synchronization button

- When the sync button is activated, the driver-side temperature control buttons turns on and can be used to adjust the set temperatures for

both the driver-side and passenger-side zones.

- Tap this button again to switch from relative mode to individual mode.
  - Individual mode: The temperature of the driver's side and front passenger's side can be set separately. The button icon is grayed out after switching to individual mode.
  - Relative mode: Adjust the temperature of the driver's side and the front passenger's side at the same time by the driver's side temperature control. The button icon is lit up in relative mode.
- When the front passenger's temperature control is operated in relative mode, the A/C system will automatically switch to individual mode.

Max cooling

- Tap this button to switch the A/C to the maximum cooling control mode. The compressor is turned on, the temperature is set to **Lo**, the fan speed is set to the maximum, the recirculation mode is activated, and air is directed to face level. Tap this button again to enter AUTO mode.

A/C button (cooling/heating)

- Tap this button to turn on the A/C (cooling/heating). The icon lights up and cooling begins. Tap this button again to turn off the A/C, the icon goes out and the compressor stops working.

Circulation mode

- Tap the Internal/External circulation button. The internal circulation icon is displayed, and the air inlet mode turns to internal circulation. Tap it again to switch to external circulation mode.

Defroster for rear windscreen and side mirrors

- With the vehicle power in "OK" mode, tap this button to activate the rear windscreen defroster/demister and side mirror defroster/demister*.
- The thin electric heating elements inside the rear windscreen and side mirrors will make the windscreen and mirrors clear. After the windscreen and mirror surfaces are clear, tap this button again to turn off the defroster/demister. After the defroster/demister works for 15min, the system automatically shuts down.

WARNING

- Do not touch the side mirrors when the defroster is activated, because their surfaces will be hot.
- When the ignition is off, be sure to turn off the defroster switch to prevent the low-voltage battery from discharging.

Ventilation

- Tap this button to activate A/C ventilation control. The outlet air is natural air, and the fan speed is 1 by default without cooling or heating function. Tap this button again to exit.

Air distribution

- Air distribution selection
  - Tap an icon on the infotainment touchscreen to select the corresponding air distribution mode.
  - You can turn on multiple air distribution modes at a time (up to three).
- Adjustments can be made according to the following air supply.

Blowing face : Air flows to the face level.

Blowing legs : Air flows to the foot level.

Defrost : Air flows to the front windscreen and side windows.

Intelligent A/C ON Method

Remote A/C ON with intelligent key

- You can turn on the A/C through the remote control key to gain a comfortable interior environment in advance.

Voice control

- Control the A/C settings by the voice button on the steering wheel or by saying “Hi, BYD".

Cloud service activation

- You can turn on the A/C remotely through the BYD App to gain a comfortable interior environment in advance.

Usage Precautions

- To quickly cool down the interior after long exposure to sunlight, drive for a few minutes with the windows open to exhaust hot air and speed up A/C cooling.
- Make sure that the air intake grille in front of the windscreen is not blocked by, for example, leaves or snow.
- Avoid blowing cool air onto the windscreen in humid weather. The inner and outer temperature difference can cause glass fogging.
- Keep the space under the front seats clear to improve air circulation.
- In cold weather, run the fan at high speed for one minute to remove snow or moisture from the intake passage and reduce fogging.
- In dusty or windy driving conditions, close all windows. If the dust raised by other vehicles also enters the vehicle even if all windows are closed, it is recommended to set the air intake mode as recirculation mode and set the blower speed at any position other than "0".
- To speed up cooling, adjust the temperature to "Lo" and use the recirculation mode for a few minutes.
- Use recirculation mode for a few minutes for quick heating in cold weather, and switch to fresh air mode to prevent fogging after cabin is heated up.
- In heating mode, press the compressor control button to light up the button (turning on the compressor), which can reduce airflow moisture.
- In the ventilation mode, the system brings in natural ourside air, suitable for use in spring and autumn.

REMINDER

- A/C odour:
  - It is normal that there may be a damp and moldy smell just after the A/C is turned on. During the operation of the automobile A/C, A/C condensation often remains in the evapourator, and the wet evapourator can easily absorb unfiltered body sweat, smokes, etc., inside the vehicle. Condensation not blown dry makes the dark and damp evaporator surface prone to mold, which is very likely to produce unpleasant odours by long-term fermentation.
- How to prevent A/C odours:

REMINDER

- Turn off the A/C and ventilate with natural air before parking to keep the air inside the vehicle relatively dry.
- Check, clean, and replace the air filter regularly.
- Check, clean, and replace the air filter regularly.

- If the odour persists after odour prevention methods are used, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for repair.
- In order to reduce odours from the A/C, if the A/C is already turned on, the A/C blower may keep running for a while after the vehicle is powered off and locked. That is because the condensed water on the surface of the evaporator needs to be dried to prevent mold fermentation. It is normal for the A/C blower to start running automatically when you lock the vehicle. No need to worry about it.

A/C Settings

- To access the A/C setting interface, go to the infotainment touchscreen→ → **A/C**.

① A/C auto mode

- Two options are available: Economic and Comfort.

② Remote A/C schedule

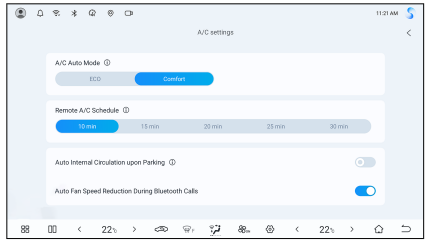
- Set the time for remote A/C running.

③ Auto internal circulation upon parking

- Tap this button to enable or disable this setting.

④ Auto fan speed reduction during bluetooth calls

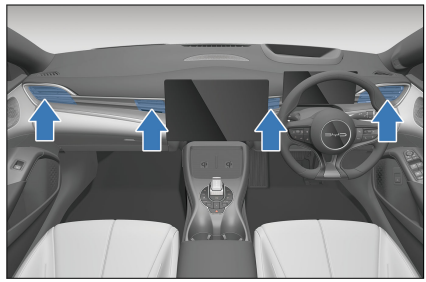
- Tap this button to enable or disable this setting.



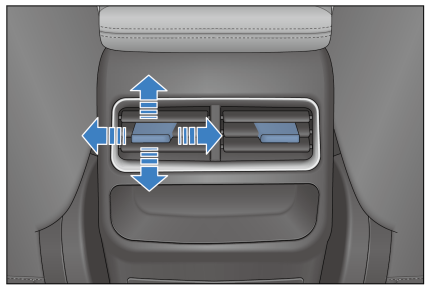
Vents

- Toggle the slat up or down to adjust the outlet angle of air flow.
- Slide the slat left or right to adjust the outlet angle of air flow or open/close the vent.

Front vents



Rear vents



BYD App*

About BYD App

- BYD app is a mobile application of Internet of Vehicle (IoV) independently developed by BYD. It allows you to control the vehicle remotely and check vehicle conditions, delivering cloud era experience of IoV.
- You can search for "BYD" in application markets such as Google Play and App Store to download and install BYD app.

Account Registration

Once the app is installed, follow the on-screen instructions or the steps below to sign up and log in.

1. Open the app, and then tap **Sign up** to go to the registration screen.
2. Enter email address registered in BYD authorised dealer, tap **Send email** to receive verification code, and then enter the code in the app.
3. Set your password in password setting screen to complete the registration, and then the homepage is displayed.

CAUTION

- Provide the email address registered at the BYD authorised dealer, or registration will fail.
- In the app, select a country or region on upper right corner of the screen. The default setting depends on your phone setting. If it is not where you make the purchase, choose the right one, otherwise your data will not be accessible.

Vehicle Condition and Control

The BYD App homepage provides information and control items of the vehicle.

1. The homepage shows remaining driving range, SOC, vehicle error information, and status of vehicle driving, charging, A/C system, doors and windows, seat heater and ventilator, and tyre pressure.
2. Tap the lock, unlock, light flashing and honking, or light flashing button to activate the corresponding function.
3. Turn on or off A/C on the app homepage, or tap the A/C card to perform other settings.
4. At the bottom of the homepage, tap the icon of seats, doors and windows, or tyres to go to the associated screen and check their status.
5. If you have multiple vehicles on an account, tap the vehicle name in the upper left corner of the screen to switch between vehicles.

CAUTION

- The control function of the app is mainly for remote use. To use this function, ensure your phone and vehicle are connected to the Internet.

Individual Centre and Vehicle Management

Tap **My Account** to go to the individual centre.

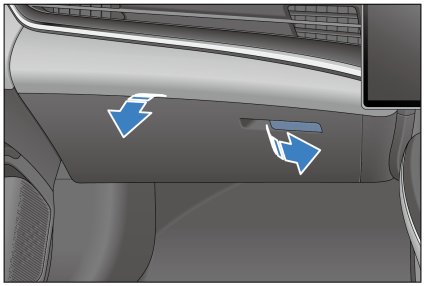
- **Vehicle Management**: edit the vehicle name and license plate number.

- **Account and Security**: recovers or changes your password.
- **Settings**: sets message reception, automatic login, and other items.
- **About Us**: includes privacy policy and information to contact us and give feedback.

Storage

Glove Box

- Pull to open the glove box.
- Push the lid up to close it.

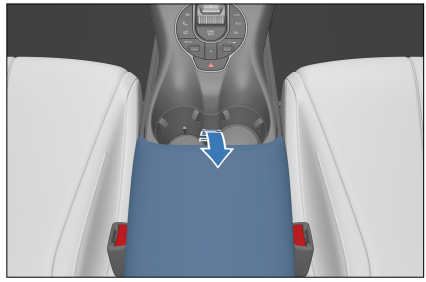


REMINDER

- To reduce risk of injury in the event of an accident or emergency braking, keep the glove box closed while driving.

Cubby Box

- Pull up the front of the cubby box to open it.



REMINDER

- Keep the cubby box closed while the vehicle is in motion.

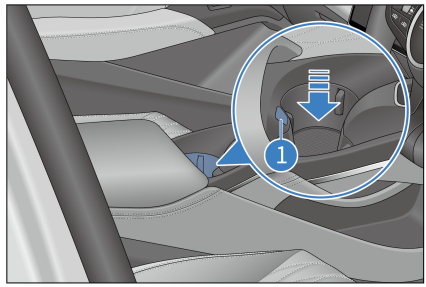
Cup Holder

Front Seat Cup Holder

The cup holder is used to securely hold cups, movable ashtray, beverage can, etc.

Driver's side lifting cup holder*

- Lowering - press the cup or directly press the bottom of the cup holder to lower the cup holder by 1.57 in. (40 mm).
- Rising - press ① unlock button to rise the cup holder to the initial position.



REMINDER

- The cup holder should hold a cup or beverage can securely to avoid

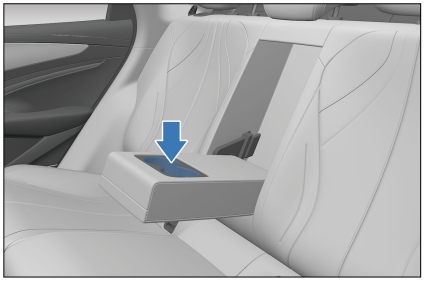
REMINDER

any liquid spilling from the cup or can.

- Please keep the inside of the cup holder clean and free of debris, such as sand, leaves, and peanut shells.

Rear Seat Cup Holder

- Flip the rear seat armrest to use the cup holder.



CAUTION

- Do not start or brake the vehicle suddenly when the cup holders are being used to prevent spillage or scalding.
- Do not place an open cup or loose beverage bottle in the cup holder, so as to avoid liquid spillage while you are driving, opening or closing a door.
- To ensure safe driving, the driver is strictly prohibited from taking the cup out or placing it in the cup holder while driving.

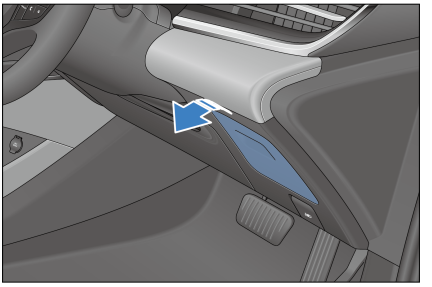
Door Bins

- There is a door bin on each door for storage of beverage bottles or small items.



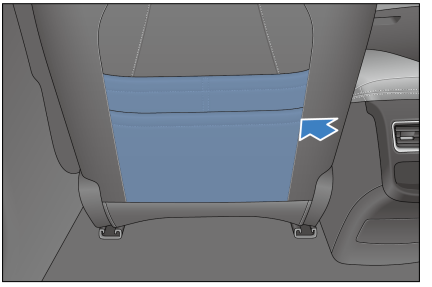
Bill Box

- Pull the handle to open the bill box.
- Push the lid up to close it.



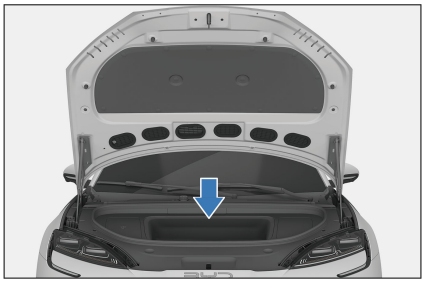
Seatback Pockets

- There are seatback pockets at the back of the front seats for magazines, newspapers and phones.



Engine Compartment Storage

- Open the bonnet to use the engine compartment storage.

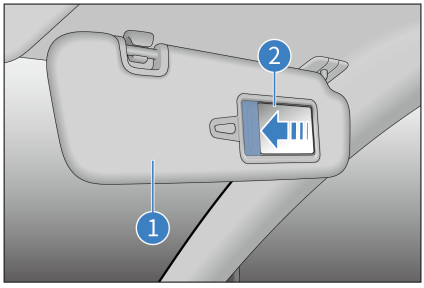


Other Devices

Sun Visor

① Sun visor

- To block sunlight from the front, pull the sun visor down.
- To block sunlight from a side, remove the swivel sleeve from the fixed support and turn the visor towards the side window.



② Vanity mirror

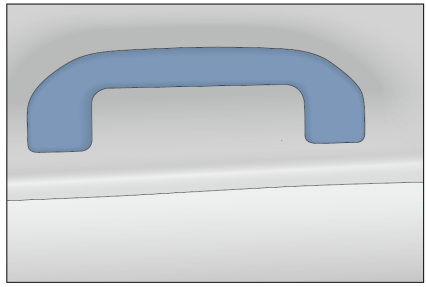
- Flip down the sun visor and slide the mirror cover for use.

REMINDER

- Correct use of the sun visor improves driving safety and comfort.

Grab Handles

- Pull the grab handle down for use. The handle returns to its original position when released.

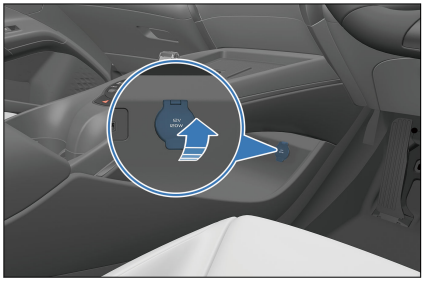


CAUTION

- Do not hang heavy objects on safety handles to avoid personal injury or damage to the safety handles.

12V Auxiliary Power

- It is used for accessories with 12V DC working voltage and no more than 10A working current.
- The 12V auxiliary power is available only when the ignition has been switched on. Lift the cover to use it.



CAUTION

- To prevent fuses from blowing, the power consumption must not exceed 12V/120W of total vehicle load.
- To prevent draining the low-voltage battery, do not use the 12V auxiliary power supply for a long time when the drive motor is not running.
- When the 12V auxiliary power is not in use, close its cover. Do not insert any object other than a suitable plug into the 12V auxiliary power socket or let any liquid ingress the socket, as it may cause electrical failure.

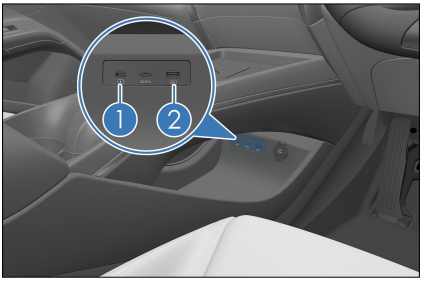
USB Ports

Front-row USB ports

Front-row USB ports are located at the hollowed-out part below the auxiliary dashboard near the driver's side seat.

① Type-C fast-charge port

② USB data transmission port



CAUTION

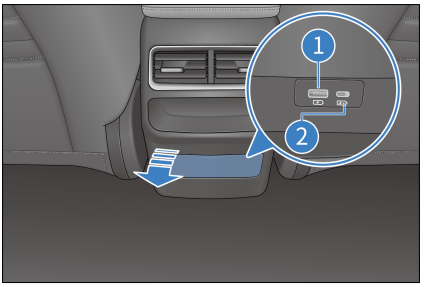
- It is recommended to use a USB storage device with a partition format of FAT32 and a memory of 8~128G.
- Do not use special USB storage devices to avoid damaging the infotainment system or data in the USB device.

Rear-row USB ports

- Rear-row USB ports are behind the centre console cubby and can be accessed by pressing the cover, and can be opened by pressing the protective cover.

  ① USB charge port

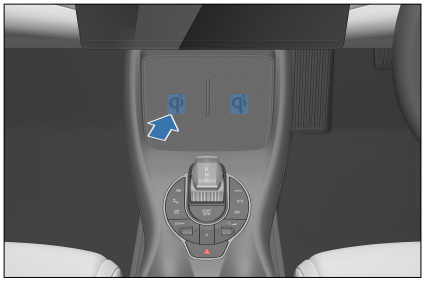
  ② 60W fast-charge port



- The power outlet can be used only when the ignition is on.

Wireless Phone Charger

- The wireless phone charging area is located at the front of the centre console. When the ignition switch is on OK, put the phone on the non-slip rubber pad in the wireless charging area with the phone screen facing up. The phone automatically begins wireless charging, and a charging icon is displayed on the infotainment screen.



- The wireless phone charging function only works with Qi-certified phones.
- Wireless phone charging uses a coil to transmit electrical energy to a phone battery through electromagnetic wave induction so that the phone can be charged without a cable connection.

CAUTION

- Ensure your smart key is more than 10 in (25 cm) away from the wireless charger area when the wireless charger system is working.
- To avoid wireless charger dysfunction or even accidents, do not place coins, metal keys, metal rings, or other articles containing metal in the wireless charger area together with the phone.

CAUTION

- To avoid damage to the charger area, do not place heavy objects on it.
- If the phone wireless charger system is faulty and does not work properly, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
- BYD will not assume any responsibility for any problems caused by improper use. If the product is disassembled or modified, the free warranty will be terminated.
- For safety reasons, do not leave an unattended phone being charged in the vehicle.
- For safety reasons, refrain from checking phone charging status while driving.
- If a metal item is found between the device and the charger rubber pad during charging, do not remove the metal item with bare hands to prevent burning.
- For better charging, the centre of the phone coil must be aligned with the centre of wireless charger (indicated with text in the charging area).
- Prevent any fluid from coming into contact with the charger area. The wireless charger will malfunction if water enters the wireless charger via the gap around the rubber mat.
- Charging may stop at high temperatures, and will resume once the temperature drops.
- The wireless phone charger system can charge Qi-certified

CAUTION

phones, and non-Qi-certified phones are not guaranteed for normal charging.

- BYD makes no commitments for problems caused by external wireless charging coils. Please use with caution.
- To avoid burning cards with chips, such as bank cards, do not place them between the phone case and the phone during charging.

REMINDER

- This function allows charging two phones at the same time.
- Thick phone shells may prevent charging.
- You can use the Qi soft switching via PAD to separately activate/ deactivate the wireless charging on the left or right side.
- On bumpy roads, the wireless phone charging may intermittently stop and then resume.
- Try to ensure that the surface on which a mobile phone is placed is parallel to the charging module. If the phone moves from the wireless charger area and stops charging, move it back.
- If the phone cannot be charged properly, ensure that there are no foreign objects in the wireless charging area, or wait for the wireless charging area to cool down before trying again. If it is still impossible to charge the phone, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.

REMINDER

- After power-off, if the phone is still charging and the driver's door is opened, the instrument cluster sounds an alarm and the message "Please take your cell phone with you" is displayed for five seconds.

06 MAINTENANCE

Maintenance Information..... 200
Regular Maintenance.....202
Self-Maintenance.....207

Maintenance Information

Maintenance Cycle and Items

Vehicle Maintenance Schedule

- The maintenance plan is designed to ensure stable driving, failure reduction, safe and economical driving.
- The maintenance schedule lists all the necessary items to keep the vehicle in optimum condition at all times.The items listed are important and need to be performed according to the specified time interval.
- Hoses with any degradation or damage should be replaced immediately. Rubber hoses (for systems such as A/C, heating, and braking systems) must be checked by professional technicians according to the maintenance schedule.

Maintenance Instructions

The vehicle must be maintained according to the regular maintenance schedule.

If the vehicle is operated primarily under one or more of the following special conditions, certain maintenance items may need to be performed more frequently.

- Road conditions
  - Muddy, sandy, or snowy roads.
  - Dusty roads.
- Driving conditions
  - Use of towed trailer, camping trailer, or roof rack*.
  - Within 5 miles (8 km), repeated short distances are driven and the outside temperature is below freezing.
  - Long idling and/or long distance driving at low speed, for example, using the vehicle as a police car, taxis or using it for transporting goods.

Maintenance Schedule

Vehicle maintenance is performed based on the mileages or months, whichever comes first.

Item	Interval
Brake friction block and disc	Check every 24 months or 20,000 miles.
Brake piping and hoses	Check every 24 months or 20,000 miles.
Steering wheel and tie rod	Check every 24 months or 20,000 miles.
Drive shaft boot	Check every 24 months or 20,000 miles.
Ball pin and boot	Check every 24 months or 20,000 miles.
Front and rear suspensions	Check every 24 months or 20,000 miles.

Item	Interval
Tyre condition and pressure, including TPMS	Check every 24 months or 20,000 miles.
Tyre wear (check front and rear wheel alignment when tyre uneven wear is greater than 2 mm, or 0.079 in.)	Check during maintenance and rotate when necessary. In severe driving conditions, check more frequently and rotate when necessary.
EPS corrosion and foreign materials on or ablation of connectors, including wiring harness GND point	Check every 24 months or 20,000 miles.
Coolant level in expansion tank	Check every 24 months or 20,000 miles.
Brake fluid	Check every 24 months or 20,000 miles.
Bumps or deformation of the highvoltage battery tray, crash bar, shield, and explosion-proof valve*, and powertrain leaks	Check every 24 months or 20,000 miles.
A/C filter*	Check every 24 months or 20,000 miles and replace if necessary. In severe driving conditions, check every six months and replace if necessary.
Drive motor coolant	Replace the long-acting organic acid coolant every six years or 60,000 miles.
Brake fluid	Check during maintenance and replace every 24 months or 20,000 miles.
Gear oil in the transmission	Replace the gear oil at 24 months or 20,000 miles for the first time, and every 24 months or 30,000 miles afterwards.
Note: When checking Item 1, replace chassis parts in a timely manner if any abnormal damage is found.	

CAUTION

- Brake friction pads and discs need to be checked more frequently in severe weather conditions, such as extremely cold regions like Norway, Finland, and Iceland.

REMINDER

- To keep the high-voltage battery in optimal condition, please fully charge and discharge the vehicle regularly, at least every six months or 44,739 miles (72,000 km), whichever comes first, for battery self-calibration. You can also contact a BYD authorised

REMINDER

dealer or service provider for capacity testing and calibration.

Severe driving conditions refer to:

- Frequent driving in dusty areas or frequent exposure to salt-laden air.
- Frequent driving on bumpy, puddled, or mountain roads.
- Driving in cold weather.
- Frequent and sudden braking.
- Frequent use of a towed trailer.
- Use as a taxi.
- Driving in congested urban areas at temperatures above 90°F (32°C) for more than 50% of total travel time.
- Driving at speeds over 75 mph (120 km/h) at temperatures 90°F (32°C) for more than 50% of total travel time.
- Frequent driving with maximum load.

Regular Maintenance

Regular Maintenance

- Be sure to maintain the vehicle as per the maintenance schedule to allow it serve in the best working efficiency and reduce fault occurrence.
- Drivers can refer to the maintenance schedule for planned maintenance intervals, depending on the odometer reading or time interval, whichever comes first.
- For overdue maintenance items, the same time interval should be used for maintenance.
- It is recommended that maintenance be performed in accordance with the standards and specifications of BYD Auto Co., Ltd., and by a local BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
- The maintenance schedule lists the maintenance items and travel time or distance based on the assumption that the vehicle is used as a normal means of transportation to carry passengers and goods that do not exceed the vehicle load limit.

CAUTION

- Please maintain the vehicle regularly according to the requirements in the Warranty and Maintenance Service Manual of BYD.

Vehicle Servicing

- Pay attention to vehicle performance, sound changes, and visual evidence that indicates service is required. Under any of the following circumstances, it is recommended to send the vehicle to a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for inspection or repair as soon as possible:
  - Motor start produces unusual noises.
  - Coolant remains overheated, is stagnated or leaks.
  - Motor jams and produces unexpected noise.
  - The motor runs with excessive vibration.
  - The motor fails to get started.
  - Electric assembly leaks oil.
  - Electric assembly emits odours.
  - Power declines significantly.

- Water leaks from under the vehicle (A/C condensate is normal).
- Tyre deflates; tyres make excessive noises at turns; tyre wear is uneven.
- Vehicle leads to one side when driving straight on a flat surface.
- Suspension unit movement leads to unusual noises.
- Loss of braking effect; sponge feeling on the brake pedal or clutch pedal; pedal almost contacts the floor; vehicle leads to one side when braking.
- Motor coolant temperature remains high.
- Battery capacity decreased significantly.
- High battery temperature or overheat protection persists, or there is no power output.

REMINDER

- Do not continue driving a vehicle that has not been inspected, as this may result in serious vehicle damage and personal injuries.

Vehicle Corrosion Prevention

The most common causes of vehicle corrosion are:

- The underbody of the vehicle is covered in salt, dust or moisture.
- The vehicle or some of its parts are exposed to high humidity and high temperature for a long time.
- The paint layer or underlayer is scratched by minor collision or by stones and gravel.

The following rules should be observed to prevent vehicle corrosion:

- Wash the vehicle frequently.
  - If driving on saline roads in winter or living in coastal areas, wash the landing area of the vehicle at least once a month, and clean the chassis and hubcap with a high-pressure water jet or steam to reduce corrosion. Wash the chassis thoroughly after winter.
- Check body paint and trims
  - Any chip or crack found on the paint must be repaired immediately to prevent corrosion. If fragments or cracks peel off from the metal surface, it is recommended to go to a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for repair.
- Check interior vehicle
  - Moisture and dust buildup under the carpet can cause corrosion. Check the undersides of carpets frequently to make sure these areas are dry.
  - Special care should be taken when transporting chemicals, detergents, fertilisers, salt, and other substances, and such substances should be kept in appropriate containers for transportation. If spillage or leakage is found, clean immediately and keep dry.
- Use fenders.
  - Fenders can protect vehicles in saline areas or on gravel roads. The bigger and closer to the ground the fender, the better.
- Park in a well-ventilated and dry area.

Paint Maintenance Tips

- Do not perform secondary painting if there are no obvious scratches on the

finish, so as to prevent mismatch or colour incompatibility.

- When the vehicle is not used for a long period, it should be parked in a garage or a well-ventilated place, and special body cover should be used in winter. Choose a shady place for parking temporarily.
- Prevent strong impacts, knocks, or scratches on the paint. If the paint is scratched, dented or if it peels, it should be repaired in time, preferably by professional auto beauty provider.
- Do not touch the paint with a greasy hand or cloth. Do not place greasy tools or rub with organic solvents on the vehicle body so as to avoid chemical reactions.
- The vehicle must be waxed once a month or whenever water resistance performance of the vehicle degrades and be taken to an auto beauty provider for maintenance once every three months.
- High quality polish and wax must be used. If the body finish is severely weathered, use a car cleaning polish in addition to the wax. Carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions and precautions. Chrome finish should be polished and waxed as well as painted finish.

CAUTION

- When the vehicle is repainted and placed in a high-temperature paint waxing workshop, the vehicle's plastic bumper must be removed to avoid damage caused by high temperatures.

Exterior Cleaning

- The vehicle must be cleaned in time under the following circumstances, which can cause peeling of paint layer or corrosion of the vehicle body and parts:
  - Driving along the coast.
  - Driving on a road with anti-freeze.
  - Driving on roads covered with coal tar.
  - Resin, bird droppings, or insect carcasses are stuck on the vehicle.
  - Driving in areas with a large amount of smoke, soot, dust, iron filings, or chemicals.
  - The vehicle is visibly soiled by dust or mud.
  - After raining.

CAUTION

- Before washing the car, make sure that the four doors, two covers and port doors are closed.
- When washing the vehicle, do not open the charging port doors to clean its interior.
- Do not wash your car in hot and direct sunlight.

Washing Vehicle Manually

Before washing the vehicle, park it in the shade, and wait for the vehicle to cool down sufficiently.

1. Hose off loose dirt, including all muds or road salts at the bottom of the vehicle and on wheel pits.
2. Wash the vehicle with neutral agents, the mixing of which should be carried out according to the manufacturer's instructions. Soak a soft cloth with cleaning solution and gently wipe it down along the direction of the water flow. Do not wipe in a circular motion or horizontally.

3. Rinse well: Dried washing agent forms markings. After washing the vehicle in hot weather, rinse all parts properly.
4. Dry the vehicle with a clean soft towel to prevent stay water marks. In order to prevent scratching, do not rub or apply excessive force on the paint.

REMINDER

- Do not use any strongly alkaline washing powder, soapy water, detergents, de-waxing detergents or organic substance (gasoline, kerosene, volatile oil, or strong solvent) to clean the vehicle.
- When cleaning the lights, do not wipe their surface with alcohols such as alcohol and windscreen washer fluid, ketones such as lacquer thinner and insect remover, or other chemical solvents such as gasoline, thinner, and carbon tetrachloride. Doing so can cause the light casings to crack.
- It is recommended that vehicles travelling in coastal or heavily polluted areas be washed once a day.
- When washing the vehicle, make sure that the high-pressure water jets are at a sufficient distance from the vehicle, do not aim them directly at the sealing strips, to prevent high pressure from distorting even damaging the strips and water from leaking into the vehicle.
- Do not use blades or gasoline to remove hard dirt from the vehicle body. The plastic wheel trim is easily damaged by organic matter. If any organic matter splashes on the vehicle trim, remove it with water and check whether the trim is damaged. Please

REMINDER

replace any seriously damaged plastic wheel trim in a timely manner. Otherwise, the trim may fall from the wheel during vehicle movement and cause an accident.

- Do not use abrasive cleaning agents to scrub the bumper or lights.
- Clean polished metal parts with carbon cleaner and wax them regularly for protection.
- Be careful when cleaning the chassis to avoid cutting hands.

Automatic Vehicle Washing

When choosing an automated vehicle wash service, be aware of certain types of brushes, unfiltered rinsing water, or machine-specific rinsing procedures that may scratch the paint and affect its gloss and durability, especially darker colours. Before washing the vehicle, it is best to consult the staff of the car wash service provider to understand which washing procedures are the safest for the paint finish.

Interior Cleaning

REMINDER

- Prevent direct water splash onto the dashboard or floor when washing the vehicle, as these may cause electrical faults.
- Do not wash the vehicle's floor.

Carpet

- Vacuum the carpet regularly.

- Clean the carpet regularly by scrubbing in a circular motion with a sponge or soft brush soaked in the suitable foaming detergent.
- Do not add the foam detergent into water and keep the carpet as dry as possible.

Seat Belts

- The seat belts can be cleaned with neutral soapy water or lukewarm water.
- Scrub the seat belts with a sponge or soft cloth. Check the seat belts for excessive wear, tear, or cut marks.

CAUTION

- Do not clean the seat belt with colourant or bleach. These substances may decrease the seat belt's strength.
- Do not use any seat belt that is not dry.

Doors and Windows

- Doors and windows can be cleaned with any ordinary detergent.
- Check the door brakes regularly. If a door brake lever is found with visible dust accumulation, wipe it with a wet soft cloth.

CAUTION

- When cleaning the inside of the rear windows, take care not to scratch or damage electric heating wires or junctions.

A/C Control Panel, Car Speakers, Dashboard, Control Panel and Switches

- Clean the A/C control panel, car speakers, dashboard, control panel and switches with a wet soft cloth.
- Wipe dust off gently with a clean soft cloth soaked in lukewarm water.

CAUTION

- Do not use organic substances (for example, solvents, kerosene, alcohol, and gasoline) or acid or alkali solutions. These chemicals can cause discolouration, staining, or flaking.
- Please confirm that the detergent or polishing agent to be used does not contain the above substances.
- If a new liquid washing agent is used, do not splash it onto the interior surface of the vehicle, because it may contain the above substances. If there is any spillage, immediately clean it thoroughly.

Leather

- Leather trimmings can be cleaned with a neutral detergent for woolen.
- Use a soft cloth with a neutral detergent solution to wipe off the dust, and then use a clean, wet cloth to wipe the remaining detergent thoroughly.
- If leather gets wet, wipe it with a clean soft cloth and air dry it in a cool, ventilated place.
- For any questions about vehicle cleaning, please consult a local BYD authorised dealer or service provider.

CAUTION

- If dirt cannot be cleaned off using a neutral detergent, clean it with a detergent that does not contain organic solvents.
- Do not clean leather with any organic material such as volatile oil, alcohol, gasoline, acid or alkali, as these will cause discolouration.
- Do not clean leather with a nylon brush or synthetic fiber cloth, as these may scratch the fine patterns on the leather surface.
- Mold may grow on dirty leather trimmings. Special care must be taken to avoid oil stains and trimmings must always be kept clean.
- Prolonged exposure to sunlight will cause leather to harden or shrink, so the vehicle should be parked in a shady and cool place, especially in the summer.
- In hot weather, avoid placing vinyl or waxy items on the trimmings, as these may stick to leather in high temperatures.
- Improper cleaning of leather trimmings may cause discoloration or spots.

Self-Maintenance

Self-Maintenance

Self-Maintenance Precautions

- If maintenance is to be carried out by the owner, be sure to follow the correct steps specified in this section.
- Note that improper and incomplete maintenance will affect the good use of the vehicle.
- This section only lists instructions on simple maintenance items that can be done by the owner. However, there are many items that must be done by qualified technicians with special tools.
- Special care must be taken in maintaining vehicles to prevent accidental injuries. Make sure to obey the followings:

CAUTION

- Beware of short circuits, as some circuits and vehicle components carry high current or voltage.
- If coolant overflows, wipe it with a dry cloth or tissue to prevent damage to components or vehicle paint.
- If brake fluid overflows, rinse it with water to prevent damage to components or vehicle paint.
- When replacing wiper blades, do not allow the wipers to scratch the glass surface.
- Before closing the bonnet, check whether any tool or wipe cloth is left in the engine compartment.
- When working inside or under the vehicle, always wear goggles to protect your eyes against flying or falling objects or splashing liquid.
- As brake fluid may damage the skin or eyes, be careful when filling it. If your skin or eyes are exposed to brake fluid, immediately flush with clean water. Seek medical attention immediately if discomfort persists.

Checks

The following items should be checked according to usage or specified mileage:

- Coolant level - Expansion tank coolant level should be checked at each charge.
- Windscreen washer fluid - The residual amount of washer liquid in the tank should be checked monthly. When washer liquid is frequently used, the residual amount of liquid should be checked at each charge.
- Windscreen wiper - Check wiper conditions monthly. If the wiper does not work, check it for wear, cracking, or other damage.
- Brake fluid level - Check the level monthly.
- Brake pedal - Check whether the brake pedal is operating properly.
- EPB switch - Check whether the switch is functional.
- Low-voltage battery - Check battery conditions and check for terminal corrosion monthly.
- A/C system - Check the operation weekly.
- Tyres - Check tyre pressure monthly. Check tread wear and whether there are foreign bodies embedded.
- Windscreen defrosters - Check the defroster vent monthly.
- Lights - Check the condition of headlights, position lights, tail lights, high mount brake light, turn signals, rear fog lights, brake lights and license plate light monthly.
- Doors - Check whether the boot lid and all other doors (including rear doors) can be opened freely and locked securely.
- Horn - Check whether the horn is functioning properly.

REMINDER

- Do not continue driving a vehicle that has not been inspected, as this may result in serious vehicle damage and personal injury.

Combination Lights

Front left combination lights

- Front combination lights are aligned before vehicle delivery. If the vehicle carries heavy load frequently, front combination lights may need to be realigned. It is recommended to have the front combination lights aligned by a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.

Fogging of lights

- Combination lights, tail lights, and turn signals on the side mirrors may become foggy after heavy rain or cleaning. This is similar to condensation on the side window during rain. It does not mean any problem with your vehicle.
- The lights are a relatively enclosed and narrow space. The temperature is very high when they light up (the mask and reflector could be burned and deformed easily), so they need heat dissipation. There are heat dissipation holes on the lamp housing for convection. The greater the temperature difference is, the more active the convection is. During the convection, the moisture in the air inevitably enters a lamp. Factors such as exposure to sunlight, convection, and bulb heating can cause the moisture in the air to condense into fog or water beads easily on the lamp surface at low temperatures. This is called fogging of lights.

REMINDER

- If fog presents inside the headlight and inside the turn signal on the side mirror, it may be due to high air humidity or significant temperature difference between the vehicle and its surroundings. In that case, turn on the headlight or turn signal while driving. The fog will evaporate after a short period of driving.
- If there is a noticeable amount of water inside the lights, it is recommended to drive the vehicle to a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for maintenance.

Canopy Maintenance

- Wipe off dust or sand on the outer sealing strips of the sunroof with a damp cloth to avoid scratches, which may reduce sunroof sealing performance.
- Wipe off dust or sand on the molding edges of the front glass with a damp cloth to avoid scratches, which may reduce sunroof sealing performance.
- Clean the rails on both sides and the front channels frequently to avoid the accumulation of foreign materials like dust, sand, and leaves, and prevent such debris from blocking drainage holes, which could result in poor drainage of the sunroof.
- When washing the vehicle, make sure that the high-pressure water jets are at a sufficient distance from the vehicle, do not aim them directly at the sealing strips, to prevent high pressure from distorting even damaging the strips and water from leaking into the vehicle.

Vehicle Storage

- If the vehicle needs to be parked for a long time (more than a month), the following preparations should be made. Proper preparation helps prevent degradation and ensure easy use of the vehicle. If possible, park the vehicle indoors.
- Charge the vehicle on time.
- Thoroughly clean and dry the body surface.
- Clean the interior of the vehicle to ensure that carpets and mats are completely dry.
- Release the parking brake and set the gearshift lever in parking gear.
- Open one window slightly (if the vehicle is stored indoors).
- Disconnect the negative terminal of the low-voltage battery.
- Pad the front wiper arm with a folded towel or cloth to keep it out of contact with the windscreen.
- To reduce adhesion, apply silicone lubricant to all door seals and body wax to the painted surface where the door seals meet.
- Cover the vehicle body with a breathable covering made of a "porous material", such as cotton. Non-porous materials, such as plastic sheeting, can build up moisture and damage the paint.
- If possible, start the vehicle regularly (preferably once every month). If the vehicle has been parked for a year or more, go to a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for comprehensive maintenance.

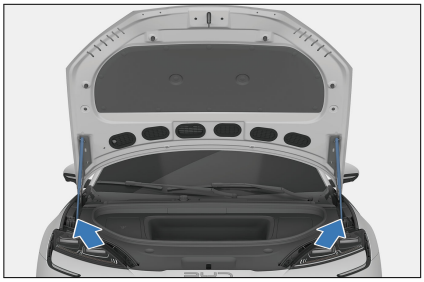
Bonnet

Opening the Bonnet

1. Pull the handle on the left under the dashboard twice. The bonnet unlocks and opens slightly.



2. Raise the bonnet to an appropriate height; then it will automatically rise to the open state.



Closing the Bonnet

1. To close the bonnet, lower it to a proper height and push it slightly until it partially locks. Then press slowly and evenly on the blue area as shown in the illustration with both hands to fully lock it. Keep your hands at a certain distance and do not press the ridges.



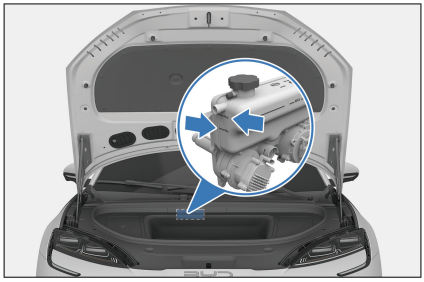
2. After closing the bonnet, check whether the latch is securely locked.

REMINDER

- Ensure that the bonnet is closed and locked firmly. Otherwise, the bonnet may suddenly open during driving, resulting in an accident.
- Do not force down the bonnet.
- Do not close the bonnet with a single hand. Do not concentrate the force in one area and cause damage to the bonnet.
- Do not press the front edge of the bonnet to prevent damage to the vehicle.

Cooling System

- It is required that the liquid level should be between the Maximum (MAX) and Minimum (MIN) marker lines of the expansion tank.
- The coolant must always be of the same specification as the original, without adding any mixture. Different brands and types of coolant should not be mixed.



- Refill coolant to the MAX line if the level is below the MIN line. Check the cooling system for leakage.

CAUTION

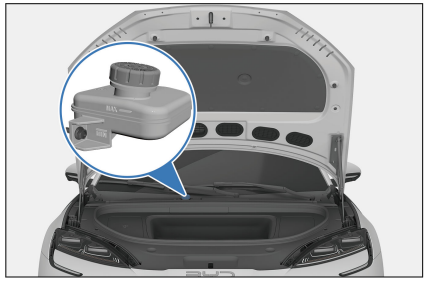
- Do not add any rust inhibitor or other additives to the cooling system for they may be incompatible with the coolant or the motor components.
- Before opening the reservoir cap, make sure that the motor, high-voltage electronic control assembly, refrigerant reservoir and radiator are all cooled down.

REMINDER

- Opening the coolant expansion tank when the motor has not yet fully cooled down may cause coolant to squirt out, resulting in severe burns.

Braking System

- Check the level in the fluid tank monthly, and change the brake fluid according to the travel time and mileage specified in Maintenance Schedule.
- Be sure to use the brake fluid of the same specifications as the original brake fluid, and different types of brake fluid must not be mixed.
- It is required that the level in the fluid tank should be between "MAX" (maximum level) and "MIN" (minimum level) marks.
- If the level is below the MIN mark, check if the braking system leaks and the brake friction blocks are worn.



- Effects of high-altitude environments on brake fluid:
  - Atmospheric pressure decreases as altitude increases, which may increase the air content in the brake fluid and cause the brake system malfunction warning light ⓘ to illuminate. Before driving in high-altitude areas, have the intelligent power braking system properly bled at a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.

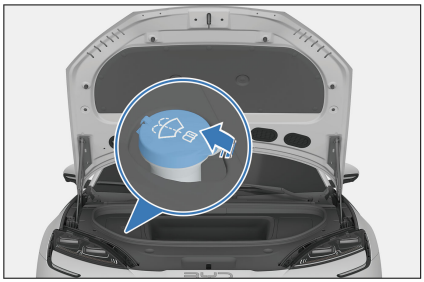
CAUTION

- If the braking system is not bled before driving in high-altitude areas, the brake pedal may feel soft and braking distance may increase during driving. In severe cases, vehicle power may be limited. Drive with caution.

Washer

- During normal use, check the liquid level of the windscreen washer reservoir at least monthly.

- If the windscreen washer is used frequently, the level of the washer reservoir should be checked more frequently.
- High quality windscreen washer fluid should be added to improve stain removal and prevent freezing in cold weather.



- When refilling the washer fluid, use a clean cloth dipped in the windscreen washer fluid to clean the windscreen wiper blade, thus helping keep the wiper blade in good condition.

CAUTION

- Do not inject vinegar-water solution into the windscreen washer fluid reservoir.
- It is recommended to use certified windscreen washing fluid.

A/C System

- The A/C system is a closed system, and any important maintenance work should be performed by professionals from a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
- The following practices help ensure that the A/C system works effectively.
  - Check the radiator and A/C condenser regularly.
  - Remove leaves, insects, and dust from the front surface of the A/C system. These deposits hinder the air flow and reduce the cooling effect.
  - In cold months, turn the A/C on once a week for at least 10 minutes to circulate the lubricating oil in the refrigerant unit.
- If A/C cooling efficiency decreases, go to a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for maintenance.

CAUTION

- Whenever the A/C system is maintained, the maintenance station should use a refrigerant recycling system. The system can recycle refrigerant to avoid environmental pollution caused by directly discharging refrigerant.

Wiper Blades

Wiper Blades Maintenance

The blade strip, made of synthetic rubber, is a vulnerable part. Various service environment of the vehicle and usage habits of drivers can damage the blades. Therefore, please observe the following to ensure the service life of blades and driving safety:

- Do not use a blade to remove ice from the windscreen surface. Use a customised ice scraper.
- Do not scrape the windscreen surface if it is dirty, greasy or waxy.
- Keep the windscreen surface clean. Do not scrape dust, sand, insects, or foreign bodies on the windscreen surface.
- During vehicle washing and body paint maintenance, there is no need to wax the windscreen, as the wax layer

reflects light in bad light, affecting the line of sight and driving safety. After washing the vehicle, rinse the blade with plain water, and use special windscreen wax cleaner to remove the wax layer on the windscreen.

- To prevent excessive water pressure from damaging the blades, do not wash the blades directly with a water jet.

Maintenance Rules

- Clean windscreen and blade regularly (preferably once a week or once every two weeks).
- Wipe the wiper regularly (preferably once a day or once every two days). When using a blade to wipe the windscreen, keep the windscreen fully wet. (When there is no rain, the washer liquid must be sprayed in advance).
- Clean the windscreen with a special windscreen washer fluid.
- Promptly clean mud and insect carcasses stuck to the windscreen with a rag.
- When there are marks on the windscreen caused by gravel, maintenance must be carried out timely. (It is recommended that windscreen repair resin products should be used and the windscreen should be replaced if marks are too large or too many.)
- Replace the wiper blades regularly, preferably once every six months.
- When cleaning the windscreen, raise the wiper arm in advance. The specific operation method is as follows:

  1. On infotainment touchscreen, tap ⚙ → **Service** → **Overhaul** to enable front wiper maintenance. The wiper is then rotated down.
  2. Grasp the upper end of the wiper arm and carefully lift the wiper arm and blade assembly.

Tyres

- For safe driving, tyres must be made and sized to fit the vehicle, with good tread and standard tyre pressure.
- The following pages provide details on how to check tyre pressure, damage to and wear of tyres, and the operating method for tyre transposition.

WARNING

- Using tyres with excessive wear or insufficient/excessive pressure can result in accidents, severe injury, or death.
- Please follow all instructions in this manual regarding tyre inflation and maintenance.

Tyre Inflation

- Keep tyres properly inflated to provide the best combination of maneuverability, tread life, and driving comfort.
- Under-inflated tyres can cause uneven tyre wear, affect steerability and energy consumption, and are prone to leakage due to overheating.
- Over-inflated tyres reduce riding comfort and are prone to damage from uneven roads. In severe cases, the risk of tyre bursting poses severe threats to the safety of the entyre vehicle. Over-inflation will also cause uneven wear and tear of tyres, affecting tyre service life.
- When tyres are cold, you can decide whether to replenish tyre pressure

according to the tyre pressure values displayed on the instrument cluster.

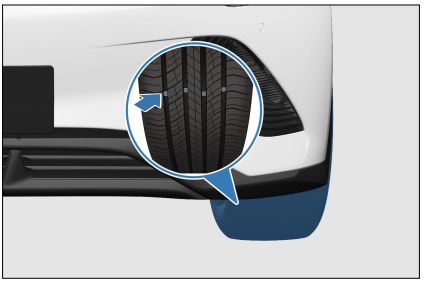
- Tyre pressure should be measured while tyres are at ambient temperatures. This means that it should be measured at least three hours after stop. If you must drive the vehicle before the tyre pressure is measured, tyres can still be considered at ambient temperature as long as the travelled distance is not more than 1 mile (1.6 km).
- It is normal that tyre pressure reading measured while tyres are hot (after travel of several miles) is 0.3-0.4 bar (30-40 kPa) higher than when tyres are cold. In that case, do not deflate tyres in order to achieve the specified cold tyre pressure reading; otherwise, the tyre pressure will be insufficient.

REMINDER

- The recommended cold tyre pressure is indicated on the label affixed to the driver's door frame.
- Tubeless tyres have a self-sealing function when they are punctured. However, as the leak is usually very slow, as soon as the tyre begins to depressurise, carefully look for the leak location.

Tyre Checks

- Whenever checking tyre inflation, check tyres for damage, foreign body piercing and wear.
  - Replace the tyre if bumps, or tread or side damage are found. Tyres must be replaced if any of the cases happens.
  - Replace the tyre if there are cracks on its side, or if its fabric or cord can be seen.
  - Replace tyres with excessive tread wear.



- Tyre treads are cast with wear bars. When the tread is even with the wear bar, its thickness is less than 0.06 in (1.6 mm). The adhesion of tyres worn to this extent is very small on wet roads.
- Tyres with exposed wear bars are experiencing serious performance loss and therefore must be replaced.

Maintenance

- In addition to proper inflation, proper wheel alignment also helps reduce tread wear.
- If uneven tyre wear is found, go to a BYD authorised dealer or service provider and check the wheel alignment.
- The vehicle has been balanced in the factory, but tyres need to be re-balanced after driving for a period of time.
- If there is some kind of continuous vibration while driving at high speeds (above 50 mph (80 km/h)), but not at low speeds, go to a BYD authorised dealer or service provider and check the tyres.
- If a tyre has been repaired, be sure to re-balance it.

- When installing a new tyre or replacing a new wheel, always perform tyre balancing.

CAUTION

- Improper wheel balancers can become loose and fall off, which damages the vehicle or surrounding objects during vehicle travel.
- Improper wheel balancers damage the aluminium rims of the vehicle. Therefore, it is recommended to use original wheel balancers.

Tyre Rotation

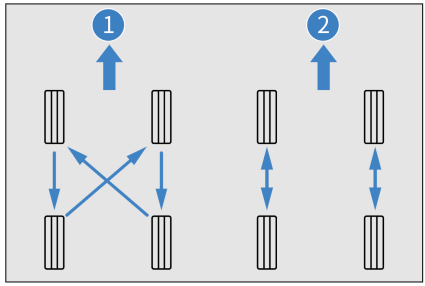
- In order to make tyres wear the same and prolong their service life, it is recommended to regularly (no more than 6,213 miles or 10,000 km) check the wear of the tyre inner and outer tread and rotate the tyres and conduct four-wheel alignment, inspection and adjustment if necessary.
- Do not rotate tyres when a spare tyre is used for the vehicle.
- After tyre replacement, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for tyre pressure matching.

Directional tyres and wheels

- When purchasing replacement tyres, you may find that some tyres are "directional", which can only be rotated in one direction. If directional tyres are used, only the front and rear wheels can be swapped when rotating tyres.
- Tire rotation is as shown:

  ① Non-directional tyres and wheels

  ② Directional tyres and wheels.



Tyre and Wheel Replacement

- Original tyres maximise performance, while providing the best combination of maneuverability, driving comfort and service life.
- Go to a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for replacement of original tyres.
- Replacement of tyres with different sizes, road ranges, rated speeds and maximum cold pressures (marked on the tyre side) or mixed use of radial tyres and diagonal tyres can reduce braking ability, driving force (ground adhesion) and steering accuracy.
- The installation of unsuitable tyres can affect the maneuverability and stability of the vehicle, and may lead to accidents.
- Do not replace only one tyre, otherwise it will seriously affect the maneuverability of the vehicle.
- ABS works by comparing wheel speed. When replacing a tyre, use a tyre of the same size as the original tyre. The size and structure of the tyre can affect wheel speed and may lead to uncoordinated system operation.
- If the wheel needs to be replaced, ensure that the specifications of the new wheel match those of the original wheel. New wheels are available for purchase at a BYD authorised dealer or service provider. Please consult a BYD

authorised dealer or service provider before replacing the wheels.

REMINDER

Please observe the following precautions to ensure proper vehicle maneuverability and control.

- Do not mix radial tyres, bias belted tyres, or diagonal ply tyres on the vehicle.
- Do not use tyres with dimensions other than those recommended by the manufacturer.

Fuses

All vehicle circuits are provided with fuses to prevent short circuit or overloading. These fuses are mounted in the under-bonnet power distribution box (PDB) and dashboard PDBs, respectively, which Fuse labels are included in these PDBs, showing the correspondence of fuses with electrical components.

- The fuses under the bonnet are located at the left rear part in the engine compartment. To open it, remove the trim first, and press the latch.
- The dashboard fuse under the driver's side is located on the right side of the dashboard. Take apart the lower body of the dashboard to check the fuse.
- Replacement of blown fuses with ones of higher amperage can significantly increase the likelihood of damage to the electrical system.
- If there is no spare fuse of the same amperage, use a fuse with lower amperage instead.

REMINDER

- Do not use fuses with amperage higher than the rated ampere value or any other solution to replace the fuses, as this can cause serious damage or even a fire.
- If a fuse blows, it is recommended to check or replace the fuse at a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.

07 WHEN FAULTS OCCUR

When Faults Occur.....218

When Faults Occur

Reflective Vest

- The reflective vest is in the tool kit. In case of emergency, always wear the reflective vest properly before you check for faults or handle accidents to ensure your safety.

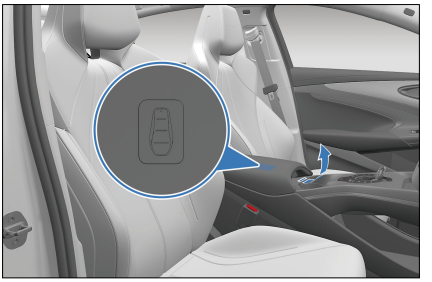
If Smart Key Battery Is Exhausted

If the smart key indicator does not flash and the vehicle cannot be started using the start function, the smart key battery may be exhausted. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for battery change as soon as possible. In this case, you may start the vehicle in no-power mode.

CAUTION

- Do not place the key in areas at high temperatures.
- Check for nearby radio stations, substations or airport radio transmitters that may interfere with the normal operation of electronic smart keys.
- After locking the vehicle and arming its anti-theft alarm system, keep the key away from the vehicle if you do not use the vehicle; otherwise the automatic card finding of the vehicle will consume the power of the low-voltage battery and the smart key. Do not expose the smart key to high temperatures.

1. Use the mechanical key to unlock the vehicle.
2. Press the brake pedal and the START/STOP button. The smart key warning light comes on and the speaker in the vehicle gives a beep.
3. Keep the electronic smart key close to the no-power mode sign in the cubby box within 30 seconds after the speaker beeps. Then the speaker beeps again and the smart key warning light goes off. This means the vehicle can be started.



4. Start the vehicle within five seconds after the speaker beeps again.

Emergency Shutdown System

- The emergency shutdown system is activated and the high-voltage system is automatically shut down when the following conditions are met:
  - The airbags do not deploy after a frontal collision.
  - There is a rear collision.
  - The vehicle system is faulty.
- The OK indicator goes off if any of the above situations occurs.
- Activating the emergency shutdown system in the noted types of collision minimises the risk of injuries or accidents.
- The vehicle system cannot be switched into the OK status once the emergency

shutdown system is activated. In that case, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for help. The system is turned off immediately even if the ignition is switched on. Contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider as soon as possible.

If a Collision Occurs

- The vehicle has experienced a collision.

  1. Immediately power off the vehicle, turn on the hazard warning light, evacuate occupants to a safe area, and place a hazard warning sign on the rear of the vehicle in accordance with local codes.

  2. Call the police rescue number according to the actual situation and contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.

- The vehicle collision will activate the emergency shutdown system and the "OK" indicator lights off. In that case, the vehicle will fail to be in a driver-ready state. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
- If it is not possible to estimate the extent of damage to the vehicle after a collision, do not get close enough to touch the vehicle to avoid the risk of high voltage shock.
- If the occupant is trapped and needs to be cut into the vehicle for rescue, contact the professional rescuer for cutting and disconnect the high-voltage system before cutting. Cutting schematics can be found on the Rescue Sheet in the documentation that came with the vehicle, or offered by contacting a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.

WARNING

- Do not carry out maintenance work during charging.
- Do not disassemble, move, or alter high-voltage battery components and connecting cables as their connectors can cause serious burns or electric shock and may result in personal injuries or death. The orange cables are part of high-voltage wiring harness. Users must not repair the vehicle's high-voltage system by themselves. If any repair is required, it is recommended to go to a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for repair.

If the High-Voltage Battery Leaks

After a collision, if there is battery leakage, an acrid smell inside the vehicle, visible acid flow outside the vehicle, or any smoke with the battery pack:

1. Immediately power off the vehicle and evacuate occupants away from the vehicle. It is recommended to call immediately a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for rescue.
2. Disconnect the low-voltage battery wearing a protective mask and anti-corrosion gloves if conditions permit.
3. Carry out a simple inspection, if conditions permit: Check whether any edge of the high-voltage battery tray is cracked and whether any obvious liquid flows out.

- In case of light leaks, avoid potential sources of fire or flammable materials. Absorb leaks with an absorbent pad, and place the waste in a closed container or burn the waste. Wear anti-

corrosion gloves before the operation. In the event of a severe leak, clean up any leaked fluids and treat them as hazardous waste. Calcium gluconate solution can help treat toxic HF gases.

- If skin comes in contact with leaked fluid, wash it immediately with plenty of water for 10-15 minutes. If there is still any discomfort, apply 2.5% calcium gluconate ointment, or soak in 2% to 2.5% calcium gluconate solution. If the condition does not get better or discomfort persists, seek medical help immediately.

WARNING

- Do not touch any spilled liquid, and stay away from a leaking vehicle or high-voltage battery.
- Do not dispose of the leaked fluid into the water or soil or other environment.
- The vehicle system operates with high-voltage DC power. It generates a lot of heat before and after vehicle start-up and when the vehicle is powered off. Watch out for high pressures and high temperatures.
- Do not disassemble, move, or alter high-voltage battery components and connecting cables as their connectors can cause serious burns or electric shock and may result in personal injuries or death. The orange cables are part of high-voltage wiring harness. Users must not repair the vehicle's high-voltage system by themselves. If any repair is required, it is recommended to go to a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for repair.
- The remote control key and high-voltage components of the vehicle

WARNING

may affect and harm people carrying medical devices.

Vehicle Fire Rescue

If the vehicle is on fire, immediately power off the vehicle and evacuate occupants away from the vehicle. Under the premise of ensuring personal safety, the following operations are carried out according to the actual situation:

1. Call the police rescue number according to the actual situation and contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
2. If the fire is small and slow, use a dry powder fire extinguisher to put out the fire.
3. If the fire is large and growing quickly, stay away from the vehicle to stand to the wind position, and wait for professional rescue.

CAUTION

- Use fire extinguishers of designated type. Water or incorrect fire extinguishers may cause electric shock.
- In the event of other special conditions that cause flying projectiles (such as interior trims and glass), stay away from the vehicle and promptly ask a BYD authorised dealer or service provider to come to the site for handling.
- If you inhale smoke, seek medical attention immediately.

If the Vehicle Needs Towing

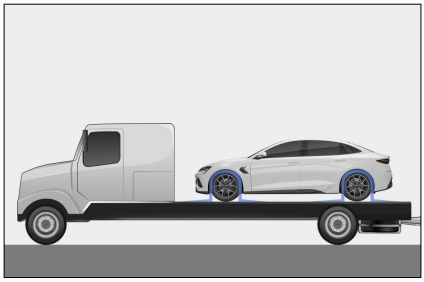
If the vehicle needs towing, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider, a professional towing service, or the organisation you joined for roadside assistance.

CAUTION

- The vehicle must not be towed by other vehicles using only ropes or chains.

Common towing methods include:

- Flatbed device
  - If the vehicle fails and needs towing, a flatbed is recommended. When the vehicle is being towed, keep its four wheels off the ground. Towing the vehicle on front or rear wheels alone may damage high-voltage components.



REMINDER

- When moving a vehicle on a flat trailer, make sure that the vehicle being moved is properly secured to prevent it from sliding back.
- It is recommended to use professional tie-down straps and tensioners, and employ the over-

REMINDER

the-wheel method to secure the vehicle.

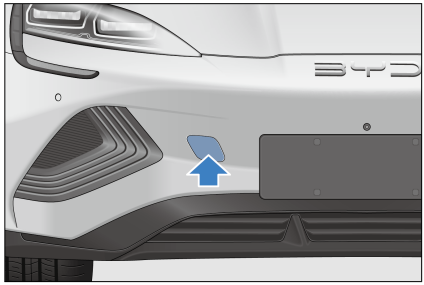
- When fixing the vehicle, avoid routing tie-down straps, ropes, or other securing devices through the wheels or attaching them to the chassis, suspension, or any other part of the vehicle body to prevent damage.
- Ensure the vehicle's wheels are immobilised during transport to prevent potential damage.

Tow Eye

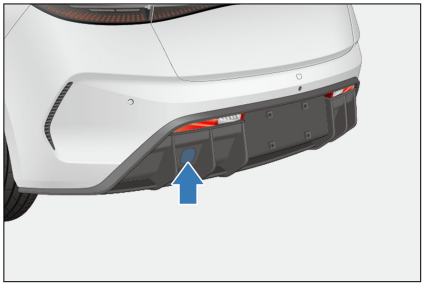
With front and rear openings, the tow eye is installed as follows:

1. Press to open the tow eye cover.
2. Install the tow eye in the tow eye opening.

The installation position of front tow eye is shown in the illustration.



The installation position of rear tow eye is shown in the illustration.



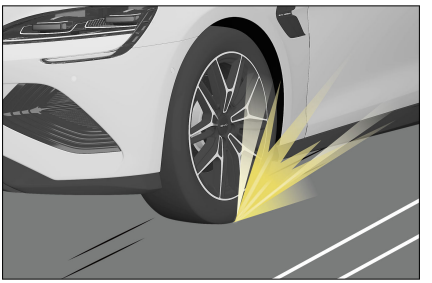
- If the vehicle needs rescue, it is recommended to call a professional rescue or the customer service number.
- In emergency rescue situations where the vehicle needs to be towed, observe the following to avoid vehicle damage or personal injuries:
  - The towing vehicle must be in good conditions and the towed vehicle in Neutral; the tow speed must be no more than 3 mph (5 km/h).
  - Never use jerking actions to pull the vehicle.
  - The towed vehicle must not carry any person except for the driver or tow any trailer.
  - Both towing and towed vehicles must have their hazard warning lights on.
  - To avoid damages to the vehicle, only the in-vehicle tow eye can be used.
  - The distance between the towing and towed vehicles must be more than 4.4 yd (4 meters) but less than 10 yd (10 meters).
  - The width and weight of the towed vehicle must not be greater than those of the towing vehicle.
  - When the vehicle is being towed, ensure its surroundings are unobstructed and have enough space and no person is close to the towing device.
  - When freeing the vehicle, control to make it travel in the direction of tow force. Dragging the vehicle from the side or vertically is prohibited.
  - The towed vehicle must be controlled by a driver inside the cabin, with the steering and braking systems in normal conditions.

WARNING

- Rescuing a stuck or high-centred vehicle by using the tow eye is prohibited. Instead, calling a professional rescue or the customer service number is recommended.
- If the steering or braking system of the towed vehicle fails, contact a professional rescue or the customer service number. Do not tow the vehicle in such cases.

If a Tyre Goes Flat

- Keep straight and slow down the speed. Drive the vehicle off the busy road to a safe place. Park on solid, flat ground and avoid motorway forks. Park on solid and flat ground.



- Please refer to the followings to operate when parking:

1. Depress the brake pedal to stop the vehicle smoothly, and then press the P button to switch to P mode. In

such case, the P gear indicator on the instrument cluster goes on.

2. Press START/STOP button.

- Power off the vehicle and turn on the hazard warning light.
- Be sure to have all passengers get off the vehicle and ask them to go to a safe place away from crowded traffic.
- To prevent slipping, secure the vehicle by wedging the tyre diagonally against the flat tyre.

CAUTION

- Do not continue driving with a flat tyre. Even a short distance of driving with flat tyre can cause irreparable damage.

In-Vehicle Tools

- These tools are stored in a tool box under the boot cover flap.

① Warning triangle

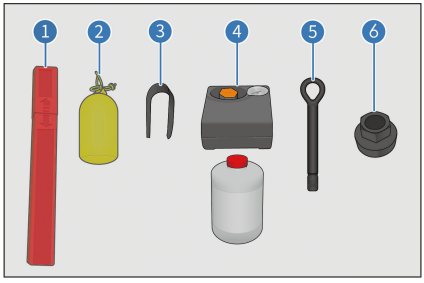
② Reflective vest

③ Lug nut cover removal clamp

④ Tyre repair kit

⑤ Tow hook

⑥ Anti-theft lug nut socket*



- In an emergency where you need to service the vehicle yourself, you must know how to use these in-vehicle tools and their locations.

Placing the warning triangle

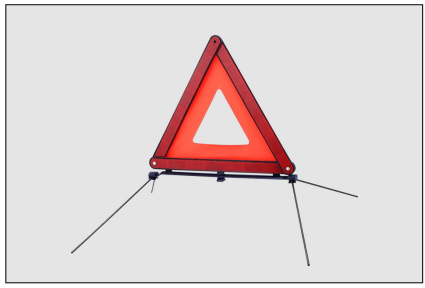
The warning triangle is used to warn vehicles coming from behind and to avoid collisions due to high speed or late braking.

REMINDER

- When parking for repair, place the warning triangle correctly as per local regulations. Ensure the red side is facing oncoming traffic to warn other drivers.
- After using the warning triangle, put it back for future use.

How to use the warning triangle:

1. Take the warning triangle out of its box.
2. Attach the ends to form a triangle.
3. Mount the supports as shown.



Using Tyre Repair Kit

- The tyre repair kit is used to seal small cuts, especially cuts in tread pattern. It is just an emergency solution for you to drive to the nearest service centre, and only for short emergency stretches, even if the tyre is not deflated.

WARNING

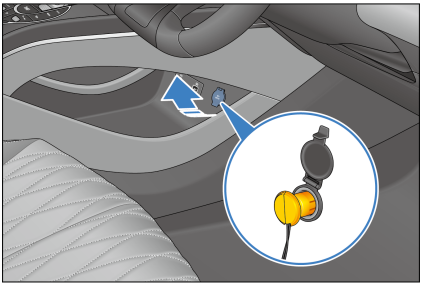
- The tyre repair kit is only suitable for minor damages of tyres. If a wheel is damaged, do not use the tyre repaire kit.
- Tyre sealant is highly flammable and harmful to health. Take necessary precautions to prevent fire and avoid contact with skin, eyes, and clothing; keep away from children; and do not inhale its vapour.

In case of contact with tyre sealant:

- If tyre sealant comes into contact with the skin or gets into the eyes, thoroughly flush the affected body part immediately with plenty of clean water.
- Change contaminated clothing immediately.
- In case of an allergic reaction, seek medical attention immediately.
- If tyre sealant is ingested by accident, rinse mouth thoroughly and drink plenty of water immediately. Do not induce vomiting, but seek medical attention immediately.

Using the tyre repair kit

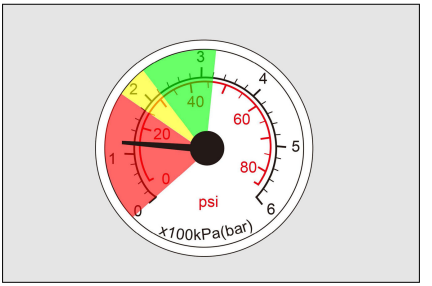
- Refer to the labels on the inflator and tyre sealant for usage of the kit.
- If the inflator needs to be connected to a power source, plug the inflator into the vehicle's 12V socket, start the vehicle, and turn on the inflator. The tyre sealant is then filled through the inflator hose into the tyre along with air.



REMINDER

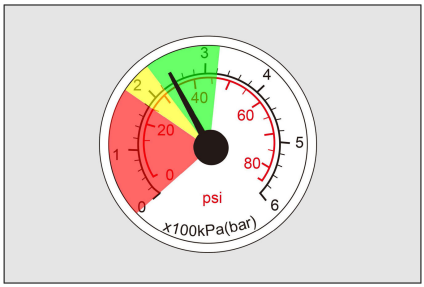
- Make sure the inflator switch is off when plugging the power supply into the 12V socket in the vehicle.
- Do not use the inflator continuously for more than 10 minutes at a time.

- Observe the tyre pressure reading on the inflator.
  - If the tyre pressure does not reach 1.8 bar (180 kPa) within 10 minutes (red area shown in the figure), turn off the inflator. You are recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.



- If the tyre pressure reaches between 1.8 and 3.2 bar (180 and 320 kPa) (green and yellow areas shown in the figure), remove the kit as soon as possible and drive at a speed below 50 mph (80 km/h) within one minute, with the furthest driving distance not exceeding 6 miles (10 km), so that

the tyre sealant is evenly distributed within the tyre.



- Stop to check the repaired tyre and the tyre pressure reading on the inflator.
  - If the tyre pressure is greater than 2.2 bar (220 kPa), drive to the nearest service centre at a speed below 50 mph (80 km/h).
  - If the tyre pressure is 1.3-2.2 bar (130-220 kPa), repeat the process to fill the tyre sealant into the tyre and observe the tyre pressure gauge reading on the inflator.
  - If the tyre pressure does not reach 1.3 bar (130 kPa), it is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.

REMINDER

- Using tyre repair kit on damaged tyres is only an emergency solution. Please change the tyres at a professional repair centre as soon as possible. It is recommended that you contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider and inform the maintenance technician that tyre sealant has been used.
- After repairing a tyre with the tyre repair device, it is recommended that you purchase new tyre sealant and inflation hoses at a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.

REMINDER

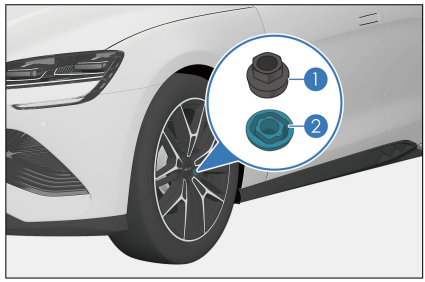
- Avoid hard acceleration and high-speed turns.
- Do not exceed the 50 mph (80 km/h) maximum speed limit and replace flat tyres as soon as possible. Do not drive further if the vehicle experiences strong vibration, unstable performance, or noise.
- When the tyre sealant is about to expire (see the label on the canister for exact date), replace it with a new one.

Removing the Anti-theft Wheel Nut*

Each wheel is fitted with an anti-theft lug nut, and you can use the lug nut socket in the tool kit to remove it.

How to remove:

1. Take out the lug nut cover removal clamp, and remove the cap.
2. Take out the anti-theft lug nut socket ① from the tool kit and connect it to the lug nut ②. After loosening the socket, the anti-theft lug nut can be removed.



If the Battery Is Exhausted

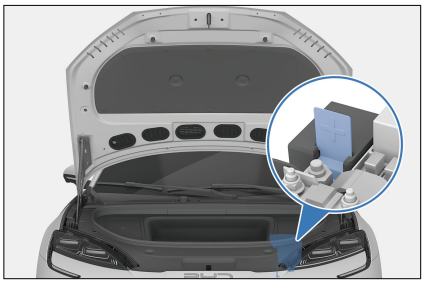
When the vehicle cannot start due to under voltage of low voltage distribution

box, try to start it as per the following steps:

1. Open the bonnet.

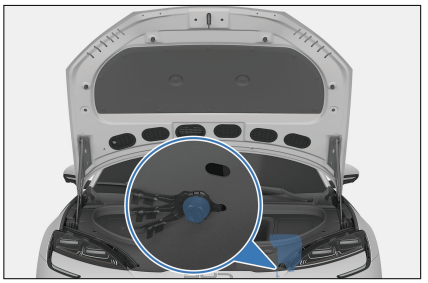
2. Remove the left trim panel of the engine compartment.

3. Connect one end of the red positive (+) cable to the positive (+) terminal of the undercharged low voltage distribution box of the vehicle under rescue.



4. Connect the other end of the red positive (+) cable to the positive (+) terminal of the charged low voltage distribution box of the rescue vehicle.

5. Connect one end of the black negative (-) cable to the negative (-) terminal of the charged low voltage distribution box of the rescue vehicle.



6. Connect the other end of the black negative (-) cable to an applicable tie point (clean, unpainted, solid and grounded metal part) of the vehicle under rescue.

7. Start the rescue vehicle and keep it running for a while. Then try to start the vehicle under rescue.

8. After the vehicle under rescue starts normally, turn off the power of the rescue vehicle, remove the jumper cables orderly reverse to connection, and put them away.

9. Install the bonnet trim panel, and close the bonnet.

WARNING

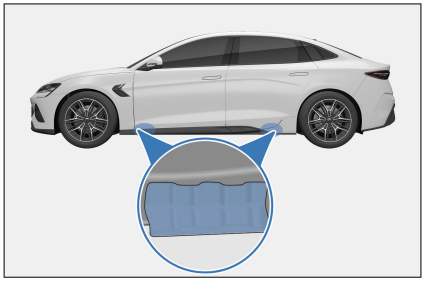
- Connecting or disconnecting jumper cables in the wrong order may lead to an electrical short circuit, resulting in vehicle damage or personal injury.
- To prevent a short circuit in the jump start, jumper cable clamps shall not contact each other or any conductive material other than the jumper points.

CAUTION

- If the vehicle being rescued cannot be started after several attempts, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
- The battery rated voltage of the rescue vehicle for jump start shall be 12 V.

If the Vehicle Needs Support

If the vehicle needs to be lifted or jacked, the lifting arm or jack can only be placed at the lifting points as shown in the figure.



- Pay attention to the followings when lifting or jacking the vehicle to ensure safety:
  - Park on solid and flat ground.
  - Switch the ignition off, and all the occupants must get off the vehicle.
  - In case of vehicle slipping, a block should be placed in front of the front wheel or behind the rear wheel when it is jacking up.

WARNING

- Do not place the lifting arm or jack on the high-voltage battery.
- Make sure that the lifting or jacking is stable and secure to prevent vehicle damage and personal injury.
- When jacking up the vehicle, do not have any part of your body under the vehicle.

08 SPECIFICATIONS

Vehicle Data..... 230
Information..... 233
Declarations of Conformity..... 235

Vehicle Data

Vehicle Data

Basic parameter

Item	Parameter
Number of occupants	5 persons
Length	189 in
	4800 mm
Width (excluding side mirrors)	74 in
	1875 mm
Height	57 in
	1460 mm
Wheelbase	115 in
	2920 mm
Front track	64 in
	1620 mm
Rear track	64 in
	1625 mm
Front overhang	35 in
	885 mm
Rear overhang	39 in
	995 mm
Approach angle	13°
Departure angle	14°

Drive motor

Item	Parameter		
Model	Short range RWD	Extended range RWD	AWD
Drive motor model	RWD: TZ200XYS	RWD: TZ200XYC	FWD: YS210XYA

Item	Parameter		
			RWD: TZ200XYC
Drive motor type	Permanent magnet synchronous motor	Permanent magnet synchronous motor	Front: AC asynchronous motor Rear: Permanent magnet synchronous motor
Drive type	RWD	RWD	AWD

Vehicle power performance and economic efficiency

Item	Parameter		
Model	Short range RWD	Extended range RWD	AWD
Maximum design speed	136 mph	111 mph	111 mph
	220 km/h	180 km/h	180 km/h
Maximum gradeability (%)	⩾30	⩾30	⩾50

High-voltage battery

Item	Parameter
Type	Lithium iron phosphate battery
High-voltage battery rated capacity (Ah)	150

Wheels and tyres

Item	Parameter
Tyre specification	225/50R18; 235/45R19
Tyre pressure	Front/Rear: 2.5/2.9 bar
	Front/Rear: 250/290 kPa
Wheel dynamic balance requirement	＜ 0.022 lb
	＜ 10 g

Wheel alignment values (at curb weight)

Item	Parameter
Front camber (°)	-0.5±0.75

Item	Parameter
Front toe-in (°)	0.05±0.08(side)
Total front wheel toe-in (°)	0.1±0.16
Kingpin inclination angle (°)	8.63±0.75
Kingpin caster angle (°)	6.33±0.75
Rear camber (°)	-1±0.75
Rear wheel toe-in (°)	0.20±0.08(side)
Total rear wheel toe-in (°)	0.40±0.16

Seats

Item	Parameter
Forward and backward moving spaces for front seats (seat cushion depth measured)	10 in (260 mm) forward from the end of slide rail travel
Seatback angle of front seats (cushion depth measured)	25°
Normal service conditions of front seatbacks	20° forward and 40° backward from the designated position; 7.9 in (200 mm) forward and 2.4 in (60 mm) backward from the slide rail; slide rail inclination: 4.5°
Forward and backward moving spaces for rear seats (seat cushion depth measured)	Not adjustable
Backrest angles of rear seats (seat cushion depth measured)	30° (sides)/27° (middle)
Normal service conditions of seatbacks	Design position (not adjustable)

Recommended oil type and amount

Item	Parameter		
Model	Short range RWD	Extended range RWD	AWD
Front drive gear transmission oil type	-	-	BOT-383/W5
Front drive gear transmission oil amount (L)	-	-	1.6±0.05L

Item	Parameter		
Rear drive gear transmission oil type	BOT-383/W5	BOT-383/W5	BOT-383/W5
Rear drive gear transmission oil amount (L)	1.55±0.05	1.55±0.05	1.55±0.05
Brake fluid type	HZY6/DOT4	HZY6/DOT4	HZY6/DOT4
Brake fluid amount (L)	1.15±0.05	1.15±0.05	1.15±0.05
Motor controller coolant type	Glycol organic acid long-acting anti-rust antifreeze (-40)	Glycol organic acid long-acting anti-rust antifreeze (-40)	Glycol organic acid long-acting anti-rust antifreeze (-40)
Motor coolant amount (L)	4.8±0.2	4.8±0.2	5.3±0.2

CAUTION

- The recommended oil types have been tested and approved by BYD. Using other oil types may compromise vehicle performance, and could cause malfunctions or damage to components.

Information

Vehicle Identification

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

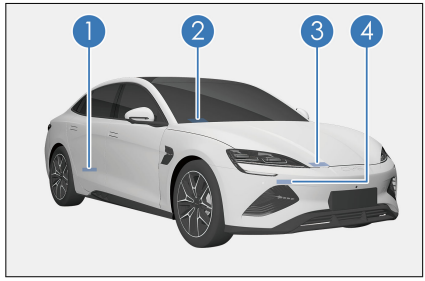
Positions of attached VIN:

① On the front side of the rear motor

② On the lower right corner of the windshield pillar instrument panel

③ On the right of the bonnet lock ring

④ On the right of the front bumper beam

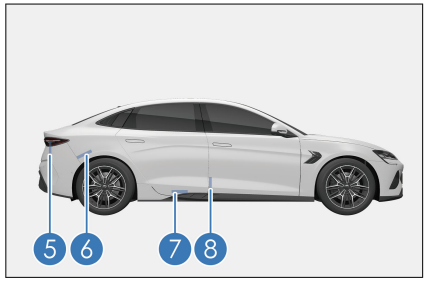


⑤ On the right of the boot lid

⑥ On the right rear wheel hubcap metal

⑦ On the right rear door sill

⑧ On the sheet metal surface at the lower right corner of the front right door



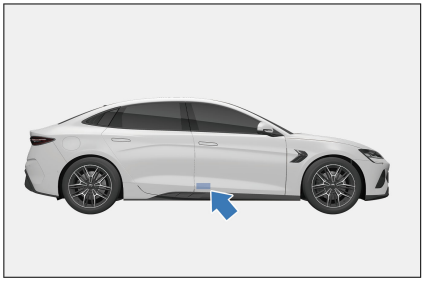
Position of engraved VIN:

VIN is engraved on the lower beam of the front right seat. After connecting the VDS, VIN can also be found in the upper right corner of the screen for the corresponding model. For details, please refer to the VDS operation manual.



Vehicle Nameplate

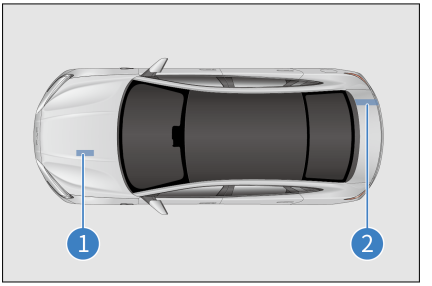
The vehicle nameplate is located under the right B-pillar.



Model and Serial Number of Drive Motor

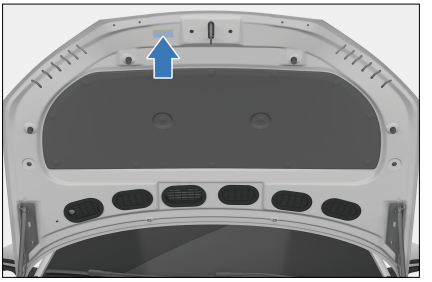
① The model and serial number of the front drive motor* are engraved on the front drive motor housing.

② The model and serial number of rear drive motor are engraved on the rear drive motor housing.

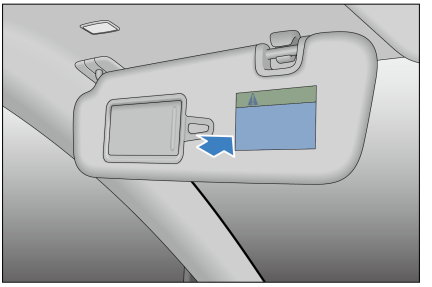


Warning Labels

A/C system and cooling fan label.



The airbag warning label is printed on the front passenger's sun visor.



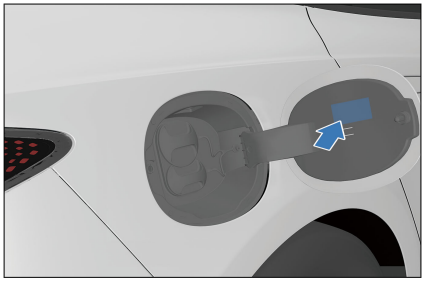
WARNING

- Never use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an active airbag in front of it.
- Death or serious injury to the child can occur.

The tyre pressure label is attached on the lower part of the right B-pillar.



The DC charging warning label is attached on the inner side of the charge port door.



Declarations of Conformity

Declarations of Conformity

Radio Frequency

CE

Your vehicle has different types of radio equipment. The manufacturers of the radio equipment declare the RF Modules listed above have been evaluated against the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 2014/53/EU. The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following Internet address: https://cn-prod.byd.com/eu/eu-doc.

Component Name	Frequency	Maximum Power
Tyre pressure monitoring module	314.9 MHz ± 25 KHz	86 dBμV/m ± 3 dB
	315 MHz ± 45 KHz	-58~-52 dBm (3 meters radius)
	433.92 MHz ± 44 KHz	87 dBμV/m ± 2 dB
	433.92 MHz ± 40 KHz	-58~-52 dBm (3 meters radius)
Interior detection antenna	125 KHz ± 3 KHz	10 W

Electronic Smart Key	433.92 MHz ± 60 KHz	10 dbm
High-frequency module	433.92 MHz	0.48 W
Wireless charger module	127.7 KHz ± 30 KHz	Charging power for one: 15 W
		Charging power for two: 15W*2
		50 W
ECALL GPS antenna	1559–1605 MHz	0.05 W
ECALL 4G antenna	701–960 MHz	0.05 W
	1.71–2.69 GHz	0.05 W
Outside NFC device	13.56 MHz	1 W
Inside NFC device	13.56 MHz	1.2 W
On-board Bluetooth device	2.402–2.480 GHz	8 dBm
Wi-Fi hotspot device	2.402–2.482 GHz	16 dBm
	5.17–5.835 GHz	
Network communication four-in-one antenna (4G)	701–960 MHz	/
	1.71–2.69 GHz	
Network communication device (4G)	700–2600 MHz	23 dBm
FM broadcasting antenna amplifier	76–108 MHz	0.24 W
FM broadcasting device	76– 108 MHz	0.8 W
DAB antenna amplifier	170–240 MHz	0.24 W
DAB box	170–240 MHz	1.5 W
Four-in-one antenna (GPS, 4G, WiFi/BT)	1559–1605 MHz (GPS Antenna)	0.03 W
	701–960 MHz & 1.71–2.69 GHz (4G antenna)	
	2.4–2.5 GHz (Wi-Fi/BT Antenna)	
Front MmWave Radars	76.0–77.0 GHz	/
Rear mmWave radars	76.0–77.0 GHz	/

AM antenna amplifier	522–1800 KHz	0.6 W
AM device	522–1800 KHz	0.8 W

Smart Key

	Uzbekistan Model: D1-92 This equipment is not entitled to protection against harmful interference and may not cause interference to duly authorised systems.
	EU countries Model: D1-92 This equipment is not entitled to protection against harmful interference and may not cause interference to duly authorised systems.
	Brazil Model: D1-92 This equipment is not entitled to protection against harmful interference and may not cause interference to duly authorised systems.
	Japan Model: D1-315 This equipment is not entitled to protection against harmful interference and may not cause interference to duly authorised systems.

MmWave Radars

	EU countries Certificate ID: T.2021.08.0001 This equipment is not entitled to protection against harmful interference and may not cause interference to duly authorised systems.

	Japan Certificate ID: 219-210015 This equipment is not entitled to protection against harmful interference and may not cause interference to duly authorised systems.
	Brazil Certificate ID: 15210-21-03745 This equipment is not entitled to protection against harmful interference and may not cause interference to duly authorised systems.

Numerics

12V Auxiliary Power..... 195

A

A/C Buttons..... 187
A/C Operation Interface..... 187
A/C Settings Interface..... 191
A/C System Maintenance..... 212
Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System (AVAS)..... 166
Airbag Overview..... 15
Anti-lock Braking System (ABS)... 176
Anti-theft Alarm System*..... 29
Around View Monitor..... 167
Auto Power On/Off*..... 112
Automatic Anti-glare Interior Rearview Mirror*..... 72
Automatic Vehicle Hold (AVH)..... 118

B

Battery Leakage Rescue..... 219
Bill Box..... 194
Blind Spot Detection (BSD)..... 156
Bluetooth Digital Key*..... 50
Brake Fluid..... 211
Break-in Period..... 104

C

Carrying Luggage..... 107
Charging Port Immobiliser System 97
Charging Safety Warnings..... 84
Check Before Charging..... 88
Child Presence Detection (CPD)... 179
Child Protection Lock..... 61
Coolant..... 210
Cubby Box..... 193

D

Data Collection and Processing..... 30
Discharging Device..... 96
Disclosure of Personal Data to Authorities..... 33
Door Bins..... 194
Driver Monitoring Systems (DMS) 177
Driver's Door Switches..... 76
Driving Precautions..... 119
Driving Safety Precautions..... 105
Driving Safety Systems..... 174

E

Electronic Parking Brake (EPB).... 115
Electronic Smart Key..... 48
Emergency Call (E-Call)..... 80
Emergency Shutdown System..... 218
Emergency Vehicle Locking with Mechanical Key..... 59

F

Fire Prevention..... 109
Front Seat Cup Holder..... 193
Function Definition..... 188
Fuses..... 216

G

Gear Shift Controls..... 114
Gestures and Responses..... 183
Glove Box..... 193
Grab Handles..... 195

H

Hazard Warning Light Switch..... 80
Head-up Display (HUD)*..... 164
High-Voltage Battery..... 100

I

If a Tyre Goes Flat..... 222
If Smart Key Battery Is Exhausted 218
If the Vehicle Needs Towing..... 221
Indicators/Warning Lights..... 37
Installing Child Restraint Systems. 24
Intelligent High Beam Control (IHBC) 169
Intelligent Speed Limit Control (ISLC) 138
Interior Cleaning..... 205
Interior Light Switch..... 81

L

LCD Instrument Cluster..... 36
Light Switches..... 73
Locking/Unlocking with Mechanical Key..... 52
Low-Voltage Battery..... 103

M

Maintenance Instructions..... 200

O

Odometer Switch..... 78
Opening and Closing the Bonnet. 210

P

Paint Maintenance Tips..... 203
Panoramic Canopy Maintenance. 209
PIN to Drive*..... 30
Power-Assisted Steering Mode Settings..... 70

R

Regular Maintenance..... 202

S

Saving Energy and Extending Vehicle Service Life..... 107
Seat Precautions..... 62
Seatback Pockets..... 194
Self-Maintenance..... 207
Smart Access and Start System..... 59
Smart Charging..... 93
Snow Chains..... 120
Starting the Vehicle..... 111
Steering Wheel Switches..... 67
Sun Visor..... 195

T

Traffic Sign Recognition System.. 148
Tyre Pressure Monitoring..... 165
Tyres..... 213

U

USB Ports..... 196
Using Seat Belts..... 12

V

Vehicle Cleaning..... 204
Vehicle Corrosion Prevention..... 203
Vehicle Fire Rescue..... 220
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) 233
Vehicle Maintenance Schedule.... 200
Vehicle Servicing..... 202
Vehicle Storage Precautions..... 209
Vehicle Use Suggestions..... 106
Vents..... 191

W

Wading into Water..... 108
Warning Labels..... 234
Washer..... 211

Winter Driving Precautions..... 119
Wiper Switch..... 70
Wireless Phone Charger..... 197

Abbreviations

Abbreviations

Terminology	Full Name	Terminology	Full Name
ELR	Emergency Locking Retractor	ECU	Electronic Control Unit
EPB	Electronic Parking Brake	ESC	Electronic Stability Controller
VDC	Vehicle Dynamics Control	SOC	State of Charge
AVH	Auto Vehicle Hold	LDP	Lane Departure Prevention
LDW	Lane Departure Warning	FCW	Forward Collision Warning
LDA	Lane Departure Assist	ELKA	Emergent Lane Keeping Assist
BSD	Blind Spot Detection	DOW	Door Open Warning
RCTB	Rear Cross Traffic Braking	TPMS	Tire Pressure Monitoring System
AVAS	Acoustic Vehicle Alert System	MAX	Maximum
MIN	Minimum		

BUILD YOUR DREAMS

Edition date: 12.2023 EN_V1 (Left-hand Drive)